


General Information

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. Operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement. You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

DANGER

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

WARNING





You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.



CAUTION


You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Symbols   or   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (yellow).

 Label Locations ► P.68

About Other Displays



This mark denotes advice for preventing vehicle damage or malfunction, or that you should be careful when using something.



Indicates that a feature is customisable.

About This Manual

This manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout this manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/Information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server, or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third-parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver system updates and related services
- to allow us to improve and optimize system updates products and services
- to respond to user questions and complaints
- for internal record keeping

*: Not available on all models

- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights
- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation), and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third-parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner. However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Contents

1 Before Driving 13

About the Hybrid System ► 15 | Check Before Driving ► 20 | Child Safety ► 31 | Airbags ► 53 | Pop-up Hood System* ► 64 | Post-Collision Braking System ► 67 | Safety Labels ► 68 | Key ► 69 | Locking/Unlocking ► 74 | Steering Wheel ► 85 | Seats ► 86 | Seat Belts ► 92 | Mirrors ► 99 | Windows ► 101 | Hatch ► 104 | Load Limit ► 106 | Towing a Trailer ► 107

2 Driving Operation 108

Turn Power System On or Off ► 109 | Shifting ► 114 | Braking ► 118 | Starting and Driving ► 126 | Parking Your Vehicle ► 128 | Rear View Camera ► 130 | Refueling ► 132 | Turn Signals · Light Switches ► 136 | Wipers and Washers ► 146 | Defroster ► 149 | Driving Features ► 154

3 Controls 164

Interior Lights ► 165 | Interior Convenience Items ► 167 | Seat Heaters* ► 174 | Climate Control System ► 176 | In-Vehicle Infotainment ► 186 | Display Audio Basic Operations ► 194 | Display Audio Other Operations ► 216 | Display Audio Customized Features ► 226 | General Information on the Audio System ► 236

4 Safety Driving Assist System 245

Honda SENSING ► 246 | Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ► 251 | Road Departure Mitigation System ► 259 | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ► 265 | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ► 275 | Traffic Jam Assist* ► 279 | Lead Car Departure Notification System* ► 284 | Traffic Sign Recognition System* ► 287 | Blind Spot Information System ► 291 | Cross Traffic Monitor ► 294 | Parking Sensor System ► 297

5 About Your Instrument Panel 301

Indicators ► 302 | Gauges ► 311 | Driver Information Interface ► 315

6 Maintenance 329

Before Performing Maintenance ► 330 | Maintenance and Inspection Information ► 333 | Maintenance Under the Bonnet ► 336 | Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades ► 347 | Checking and Maintaining Tyres ► 349 | 12-Volt Battery ► 353 | Climate Control System Maintenance ► 356 | Cleaning ► 358

7 Handling the Unexpected 362

Tools ► 363 | When a Lightbulb Goes Out ► 364 | Remote Transmitter Care ► 365 | If a Tyre Goes Flat ► 367 | Handling of the jack ► 379 | Power System Won't Start ► 380 | If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead ► 383 | Overheating ► 386 | When a Warning Appears ► 389 | Fuses ► 391 | Emergency Towing ► 397 | If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door ► 398 | If You Cannot Open the Hatch ► 399

8 Vehicle Information 400

Specifications ► 401 | Identification Numbers ► 404 | Utility Compliance* ► 406 | Devices that Emit Radio Waves* ► 407 | Open Source Licence ► 409

1

2

3

4

5

6

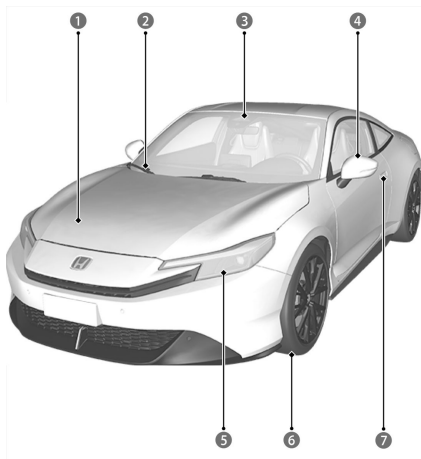
7

8

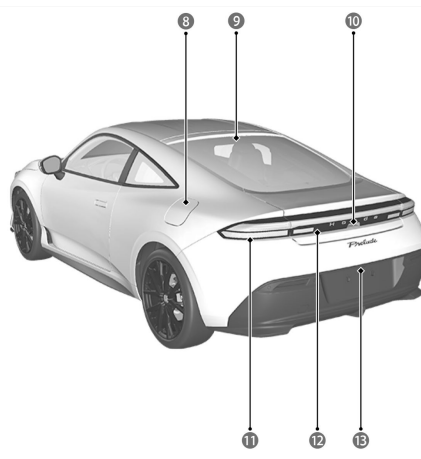
Index

*: Not available on all models

Visual Index

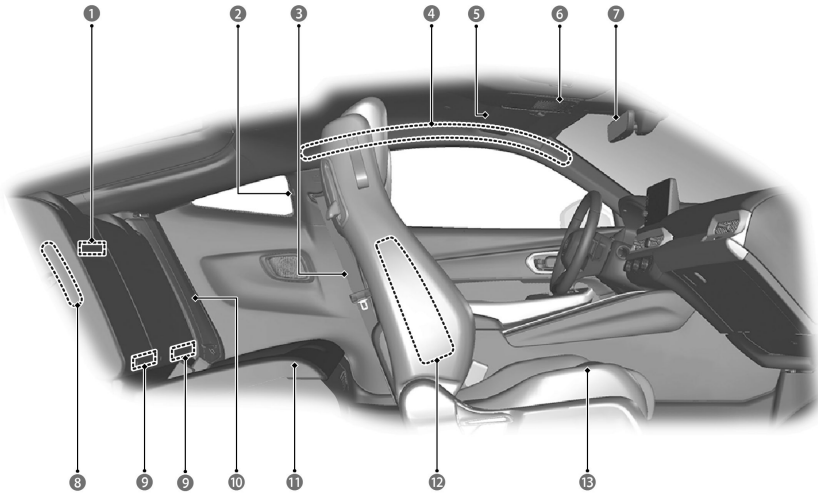




1	Maintenance Under the Bonnet	▶ 336
2	Windscreen Wipers	▶ 146 ▶ 347
3	Front Wide View Camera	▶ 249
4	Power Door Mirrors	▶ 99
	Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
5	Headlights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
	Position/Daytime Running Lights	▶ 136 ▶ 139 ▶ 364
	Front Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
6	Tyres	▶ 349 ▶ 367
7	Door Lock/Unlock Control	▶ 76




8	How to Refuel	▶ 133
9	High-Mount Brake Light	▶ 364
10	Opening/Closing the Hatch	▶ 105
11	Brake Lights	▶ 364
	Taillights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
	Rear Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
	Rear Side Marker Lights	▶ 364
12	Taillights	▶ 136 ▶ 364
	Back-Up Lights	▶ 364
	Rear Fog Light*	▶ 139 ▶ 364
13	Rear Licence Plate Light	▶ 364
	Rear View Camera	▶ 130

*: Not available on all models

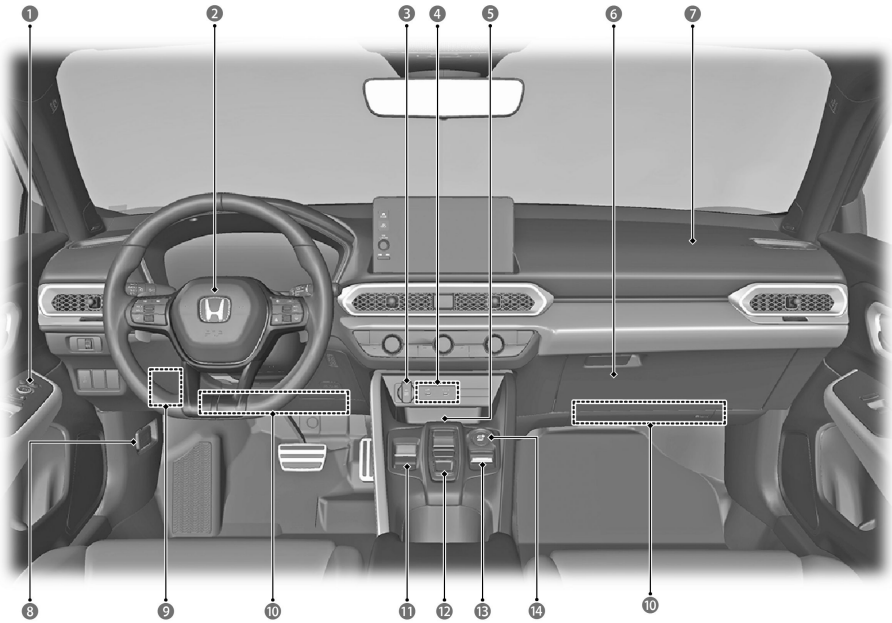


1	Luggage Area Lights	
2	Coat Hooks	▶ 171
3	Seat Belts	▶ 92
4	Side Curtain Airbags	▶ 60
5	Sun Visors	▶ 168
	Vanity Mirrors	
6	 Interior light	▶ 165
	 Map Lights	▶ 165
	Sunglasses Holder	▶ 173
7	Rearview Mirror	▶ 99

8	Rear Side Airbags*	▶ 58
9	 Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint System	▶ 43
10	Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)	▶ 47
	Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System	▶ 49
11	Rear Seat	▶ 90
12	Front Side Airbags	▶ 58
13	Front Seat	▶ 88

*: Not available on all models

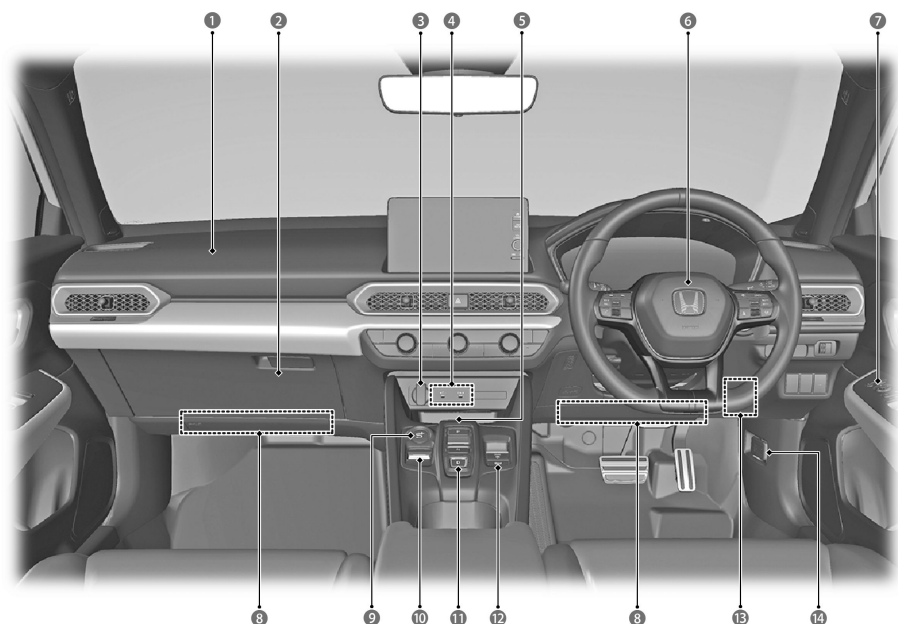
▼ Left-hand Drive Type



1	Door Mirror Controls	▶ 99
	Power Window Switches	▶ 101
	Master Door Lock Switch	▶ 82
2	Driver's Front Airbag	▶ 54
3	Accessory Power Socket	▶ 168
4	USB Ports	▶ 188
5	Wireless Charger	▶ 169
6	Glove Box	▶ 167
7	Passenger's Front Airbag	▶ 54

8	Bonnet Release Handle	▶ 337
9	Interior Fuse Box	▶ 393
10	Knee Airbags	▶ 56
11	Electric Parking Brake Switch	▶ 118
	Automatic Brake Hold Button	▶ 121
12	Shift Button	▶ 114
13	DRIVE MODE Switch	▶ 154
14	Honda S+ Shift Switch	▶ 158

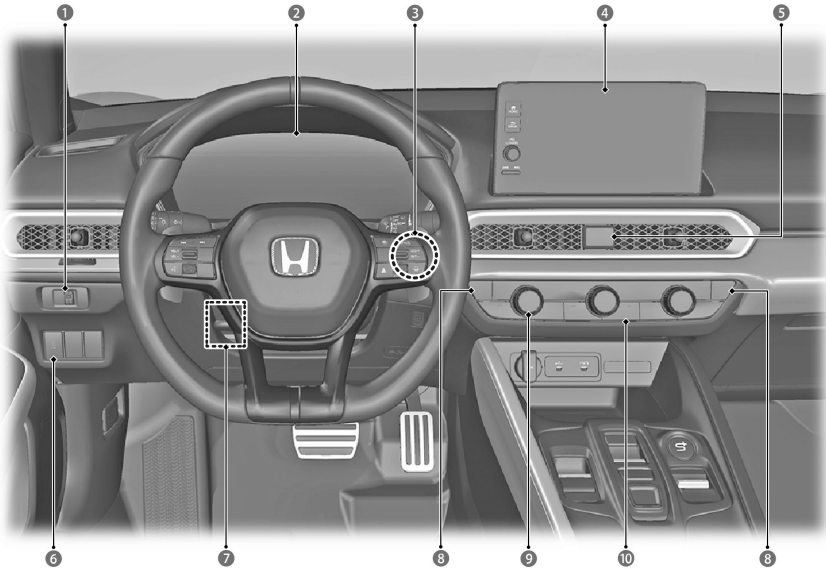
▼ Right-hand Drive Type



1	Passenger's Front Airbag	▶ 54
2	Glove Box	▶ 167
3	Accessory Power Socket	▶ 168
4	USB Ports	▶ 188
5	Wireless Charger	▶ 169
6	Driver's Front Airbag	▶ 54
7	Door Mirror Controls	▶ 99
	Power Window Switches	▶ 101
	Master Door Lock Switch	▶ 82

8	Knee Airbags	▶ 56
9	Honda S+ Shift Switch	▶ 158
10	DRIVE MODE Switch	▶ 154
11	Shift Button	▶ 114
12	Electric Parking Brake Switch	▶ 118
	Automatic Brake Hold Button	▶ 121
13	Interior Fuse Box	▶ 393
14	Bonnet Release Handle	▶ 337

▼ Left-hand Drive Type

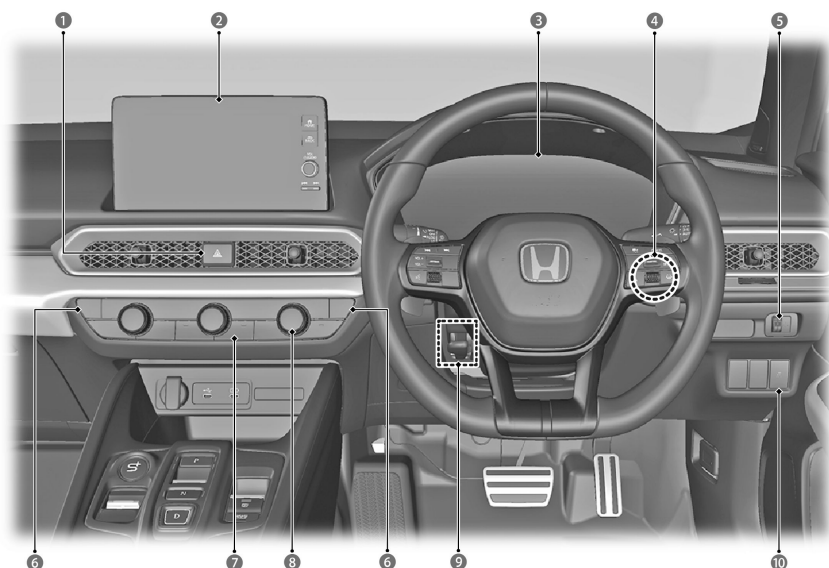





1	Brightness Control	▶ 314
2	System Indicators	▶ 302
	Gauges	▶ 311
	Driver Information Interface	▶ 315
3	POWER Button	▶ 109
4	Audio System	▶ 186
5	Hazard Warning Button	
6	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF Button	▶ 161
	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button*	▶ 159




7	Steering Wheel Adjustments	▶ 85
8	Seat Heater Buttons*	▶ 174
9	Climate Control System	▶ 176
10	Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button	▶ 149

*: Not available on all models

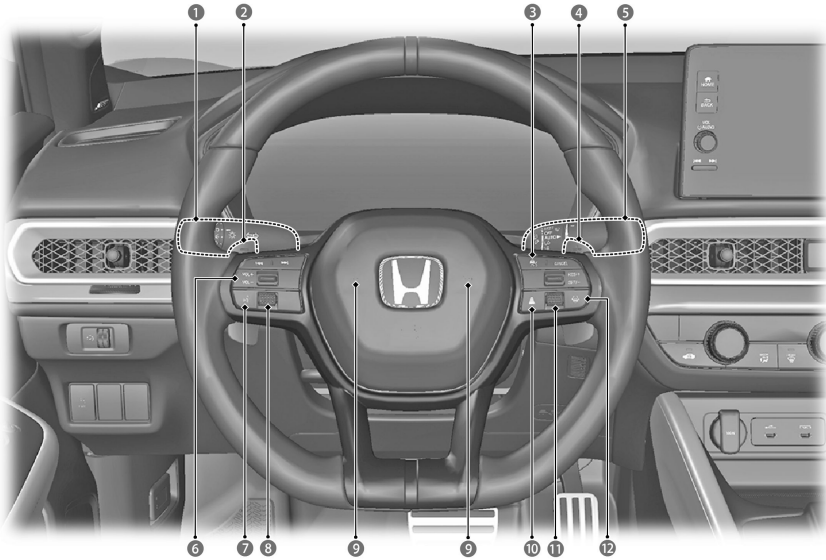
▼ Right-hand Drive Type



①	 Hazard Warning Button	
②	Audio System	▶ 186
③	System Indicators	▶ 302
	Gauges	▶ 311
	Driver Information Interface	▶ 315
④	POWER Button	▶ 109
⑤	 Brightness Control	▶ 314
⑥	 Seat Heater Buttons*	▶ 174

⑦	 Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button	▶ 149
⑧	Climate Control System	▶ 176
⑨	Steering Wheel Adjustments	▶ 85
⑩	 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF Button	▶ 161
	 Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button*	▶ 159

*: Not available on all models



1	Headlights*	▶136
	Turn Signals*	▶136
	Rear Fog Light*	▶139
	Wipers/ Washers*	▶146
2	Paddle	▶156 ▶159
3	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons	▶266
4	Paddle	▶156 ▶159
5	Headlights*	▶136
	Turn Signals*	▶136
	Wipers/ Washers*	▶146
6	Audio Remote Controls	▶189

7	(Talk) Button	▶189
8	Left Selector Wheel	▶189
9	Horn (Press an area around)	
10	Interval Button	▶270
11	Right Selector Wheel	▶315
12	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button	▶276

*: Not available on all models

Before Driving

About the Hybrid System

e:HEV	15
Driving Mode	17
High Voltage System and Battery	18

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving	20
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	22
Driving Preparation	23
Precautions While Driving	26
Exhaust Gas Hazard	27
Modifications and Accessories	28

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	31
Safety of Infants and Small Children	33
Installing a Child Restraint System	43
Safety of Larger Children	50

Airbags

About Your Airbags	53
Airbag System Components	53
Front Airbags (SRS)	54
Knee Airbags	56
Side Airbags	58
Side Curtain Airbags	60
Airbag System Indicators	61
Airbag Care	63

Pop-up Hood System*

About the Pop-up Hood System	64
------------------------------	----

Post-Collision Braking System

About the Post-Collision Braking System	67
-----------------------------------------	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	68
-----------------	----

Key

Details on the Key	69
--------------------	----

Built-in Key	72
--------------	----

Key Number Tag	73
----------------	----

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter	74
------------------------------	----

Using the Keyless Access System	76
---------------------------------	----

Locking the Doors and Hatch (Walk Away Auto Lock)	79
---------------------------------------------------	----

Lock Presetting	80
-----------------	----

Unlocking the Doors Using a Key	81
---------------------------------	----

Locking a Door Without Using a Key	81
------------------------------------	----

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	82
---------------------------------------------	----

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*	83
------------------------------	----

What to Do If	84
---------------	----

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	85
------------------------------	----

Seats

Adjusting the Seat	86
--------------------	----

Adjusting the Front Seat Positions	88
------------------------------------	----

Rear Seat Access	89
------------------	----

Rear Seats	90
------------	----

Rear Seat Reminder	90
--------------------	----

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	92
-----------------------	----

Fastening a Seat Belt	94
-----------------------	----

Seat Belt Inspection	97
----------------------	----

Anchorage Points	98
------------------	----

Mirrors

About Mirrors	99
---------------	----

Interior Rearview Mirror	99
--------------------------	----

Power Door Mirrors	99
--------------------	----

Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows	101
-----------------------------------	-----

*: Not available on all models

Before Driving

Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote···
..... 103

Hatch

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch···104
Opening/Closing the Hatch·········· 105

Load Limit

About Load Limit·········· 106

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer··········107

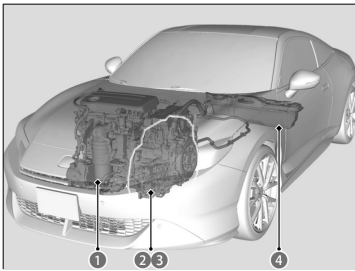
*: Not available on all models

About the Hybrid System

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking. When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two.

Components



1 Petrol Engine:

Runs the generator, and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

2 Generator:

Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

3 Electric Motor:

Provides direct power to the wheels (together with the engine in some cases). Also, the electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

4 High Voltage Battery:

The High Voltage battery stores electricity and supplies electricity to the motor.

High voltage parts and high voltage wires in this vehicle are sheathed in electromagnetic shielding material; therefore, the amount of electromagnetic waves emitted is no greater than those emitted by household appliances or the electrical parts in conventional vehicles.

Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle: a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems: and the High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Sounds Unique to the e:HEV

You may hear the following sounds when turning on the power system, or driving.

When starting and stopping the engine:

The sound of the powertrain operating can be heard coming from the front of the vehicle.

At acceleration:

Motor and engine operating sounds can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment.

At deceleration:

To regenerate energy, the sounds of motor regeneration can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment. Also, when depressing the brake pedal while driving at low speeds, or when changing the braking system to regenerative braking, you may hear a sound coming from the brakes.

Climate control system in operation:

The sound of the compressor and/or heating system operating can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment.

Energy Efficiency

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine.

In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

Driving Mode

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

» Depending on the climate control system, High Voltage battery, and driving conditions, the engine will start and stop automatically.

Electric Vehicle (EV) driving mode

When parked or while driving at low speeds, the **EV** indicator comes on and the vehicle is powered only by the motor.

Hybrid (HV) driving mode

When driving under high load conditions (such as when accelerating or going uphill), the engine operates and runs the generator. The generator then provides that electricity to the motor to help to run the motor when driving. It also charges the High Voltage battery.

Engine (Direct Drive) driving mode

When driving at high speeds under light load conditions, the vehicle is powered mainly by the engine. Also depending on the situation, electricity from the High Voltage battery helps the motor run, or the motor acts as a generator that charges the High Voltage battery.

Regeneration driving mode

When the accelerator pedal is not being operated while decelerating or descending a hill, the motor acts as a generator and operates regenerative braking, and the electricity gained through regenerative braking is provided to the High Voltage battery.

» The regenerative braking feature works similarly to engine braking. The rate of deceleration can be changed by using the deceleration paddle selector.

 Deceleration Paddle Selector ► P.156

High Voltage System and Battery

Characteristics of High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months. Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

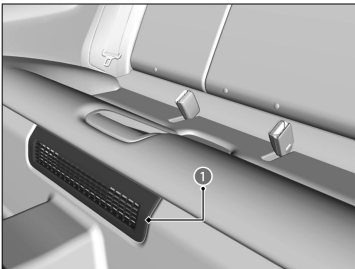


Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much.

If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the engine.

Safety Precautions

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.



Do not cover the air intake (1).

If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the **POWER SYSTEM** indicator*1/power system indicator*2 and 12-volt battery charging system indicator to come on.

*1: Philippine models

*2: Except Philippine models

⚠ WARNING

If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or orange wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin and flush any exposed eyes with copious amounts of water for a few minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.



Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.



Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

Honda collects and recycles High Voltage batteries used in its vehicles – consult a dealer for more information.

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

1 Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

2 Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

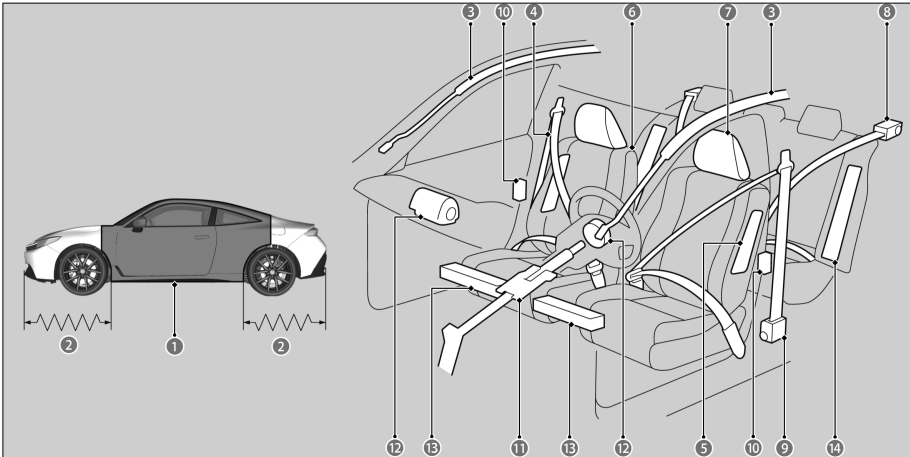
3 Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

4 Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- 1 Safety Cage
- 2 Crush Zones
- 3 Side Curtain Airbags
- 4 Seat Belts
- 5 Side Airbags (Front)
- 6 Seats and Seat-Backs
- 7 Head Restraints
- 8 Seat Belt Tensioners (Rear Seats)
- 9 Seat Belt Tensioners (Front Seats)
- 10 Door Locks
- 11 Collapsible Steering Column
- 12 Front Airbags
- 13 Knee Airbags
- 14 Side Airbags (Rear)*

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

*: Not available on all models

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Driving Preparation

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - » There are blind spots from the inside.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - » Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
Q Checking Tyres ▶ P.349
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - » If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - » Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - » Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - » When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the door is not frozen.
 - » When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.
- Make sure that there are no flammable materials left under the bonnet.
 - » Be especially careful if the vehicle has not been used for a long time, or after maintenance. The heat from the engine and exhaust may cause flammable materials to catch fire, leading to unexpected accidents.

Interior Checks

▼ Philippine models



- If the door and/or hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

▼ Except Philippine models



- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

[Q Adjusting the Front Seat Positions ▶ P.88](#)

[Q Adjusting the Seat ▶ P.86](#)

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

[Q Adjusting the Front Seat Positions ▶ P.88](#)

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

[Q Fastening a Seat Belt ▶ P.94](#)

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.

[Q Protecting Child Passengers ▶ P.31](#)

- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - » An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - » Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
 - » They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - » Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - [🔍 Adjusting the Steering Wheel ▶ P.85](#)
 - [🔍 Interior Rearview Mirror ▶ P.99](#)
 - [🔍 Power Door Mirrors ▶ P.99](#)
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - » They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - » They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - » Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - [🔍 Indicator List ▶ P.302](#)

About Headlight Adjustment

■ Headlight aim

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aim readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

■ Low beam headlight angle

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

▼ Taiwanese and Malaysian models

■ Headlight distribution

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right-hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, if used temporary. For permanent conversion, please consult with the dealer.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles.

CAUTION

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.



Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads.

Driving through deep water will cause damage to the power system and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

The following can damage the under spoiler, under covers, front bumper, rear diffuser, and side sill:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along a road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes
- Driving over speed bumps

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up, causing the system to go into a protective mode and make the steering wheel progressively harder to operate.

- » Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
- » Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas


The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

[1] Select the fresh air mode.

[2] Select the  mode.

[3] Set the fan speed to high.

[4] Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.



Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Modifications and Accessories

Modifications

- Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-Genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.
- Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance.
- Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's to local regulations.
- The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drainage of the 12-volt battery, or other unexpected problems.
- Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's High Voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda High Voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine High Voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

 **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

 **WARNING**

Use of improperly designed, engineered, or manufactured High Voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.




Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation of your vehicle.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas containing airbags.
Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

 **Checking Fuses** ▶ P.391

- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

1

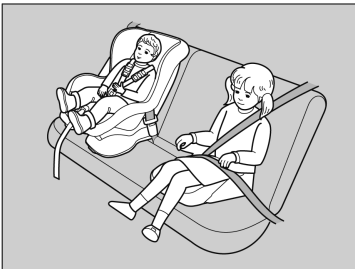
Before Driving

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.



- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.














In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

▼ **Except Taiwanese models**

 WARNING							
Front Passenger's Sun Visor	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.						
<table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3"> AIRBAG</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>	 AIRBAG						
 AIRBAG							
							

▼ **Taiwanese models**

 WARNING							
<table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3"> 依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></tbody></table>		 依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童					
 依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童							
							

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

 [Opening/Closing the Power Windows](#) ▶ P.101

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.

Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system



Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- » We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- » Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Front-facing child restraint system placement



We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

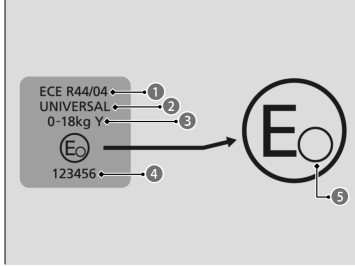
In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

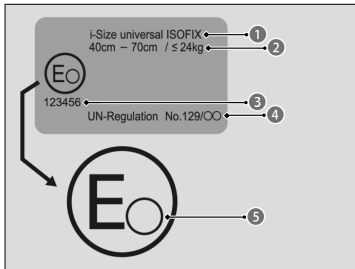
- ❗ Child Restraint System that have been complied with UN Regulation has the approval label.
Check the approval label on the Child Restrain System.

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



- 1 Regulation number
- 2 Category
- 3 "Mass group"
- 4 Approval number
- 5 Country code

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



- 1 Category
- 2 Size and weight indication
- 3 Approval number
- 4 Regulation number
- 5 Country code

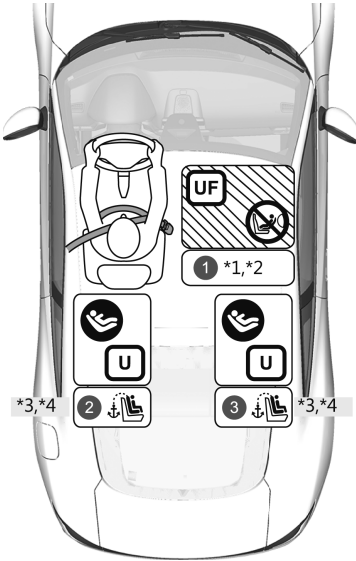
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

The Recommended Child Restraint Systems

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

▼ Except Taiwanese models

▼ Left-hand Drive Type



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the top.
- Do not use strap when installing a child restraint system.

Fastening a Seat Belt ▶ P.94

- A child restraint system with support legs can be installed in the passenger seat.
- *2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *3: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.
- *4: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.
- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number		
			①	②	③
			Front passenger ^{*1,*2}	2nd row ^{*4,*5}	
Left	Right				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg	Yes ^{*3}	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15–25kg			
	Group III	22–36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	Up to 150cm		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS ^{*6}	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R1	R1
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9–18kg	No	F2X	F2X
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	Up to 150cm		B3	No	No

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the top.
- Do not use strap when installing a child restraint system.

 **Fastening a Seat Belt** ▶ P.94

- A child restraint system with support legs can be installed in the passenger seat.

*2: Forward facing only

*3: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

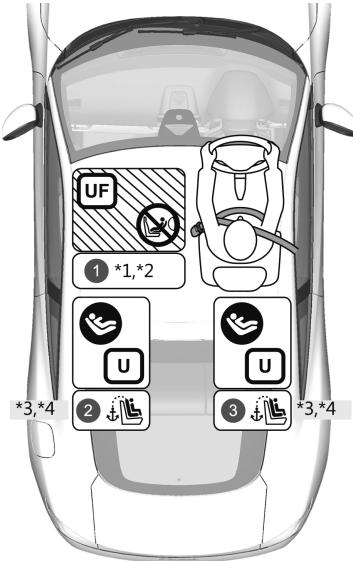
*4: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.

*5: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.

- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.

*6: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

▼ Right-hand Drive Type



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the top.
- Do not use strap when installing a child restraint system.

Q Fastening a Seat Belt ▶ P.94

- A child restraint system with support legs can be installed in the passenger seat.
- *2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
- *3: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.
- *4: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.
- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number		
			①	②	③
			Front passenger ^{*1,*2}	2nd row ^{*4,*5}	
Left	Right				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg	Yes ^{*3}	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15–25kg			
	Group III	22–36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	Up to 150cm		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS ^{*6}	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R1	R1
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9–18kg	No	F2X	F2X
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	Up to 150cm		B3	No	No

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.

- If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the top.
- Do not use strap when installing a child restraint system.

 **Fastening a Seat Belt** ▶ P.94

- A child restraint system with support legs can be installed in the passenger seat.

*2: Forward facing only

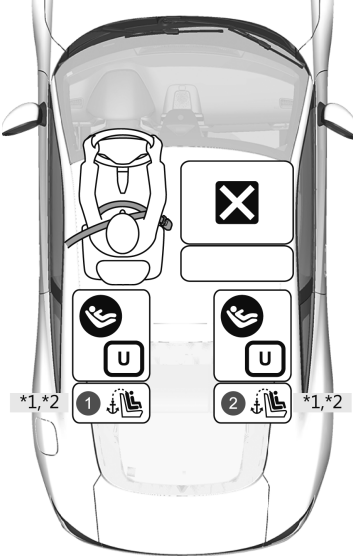
*3: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.

*5: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.

- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.
- *6: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

▼ Taiwanese models



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.
	Never use a child restraint system.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.

- *1: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.
- *2: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.
- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number	
			①	②
			2nd row ^{*1,*2}	
			Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg		
	Group I	9–18kg	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15–25kg		
	Group III	22–36kg		
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	Up to 150cm		No	No
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS ^{*3}	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	R1	R1
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg		
	Group I	9–18kg		
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9–18kg	F2X	F2X
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	Up to 150cm		No	No

*1: When installing a child restraint system in the rear seat, adjust the front seats so that the child or child restraint system does not contact with the front seats.

*2: When installing a child restraint system using with ISOFIX (lower anchorage connector), the seat belt cannot be used.

- When using a booster seat, do not use the ISOFIX lower anchorage connector.

*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

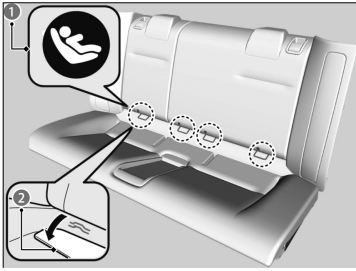
Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Installing a Child Restraint System

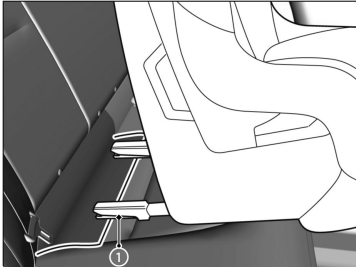
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

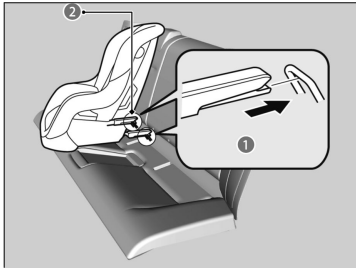


- [1] Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
- [2] Pull out the anchorage covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.
- [3] Place the child restraint system so that the probes are on the cover.

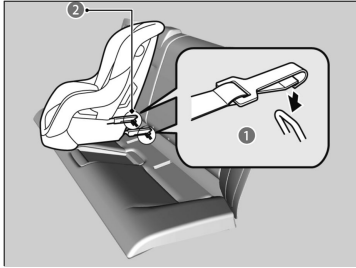
- 1** Marks
- 2** Cover



- 1** Probes



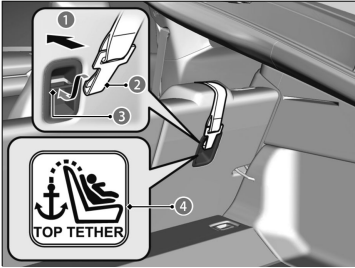
- 1** Rigid Type Type
- 2** Lower Anchorages



- 1** Flexible Type
- 2** Lower Anchorages

- [4] Attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
- » When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.
 - » Install the child restraint system so that the gap between it and the seat back is as small as possible.

▼ **Straight Top Tether Type**

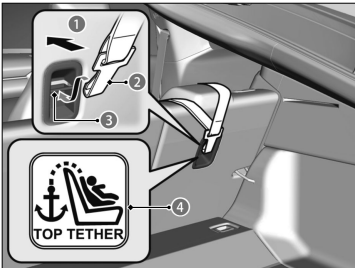


- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage
- 4 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

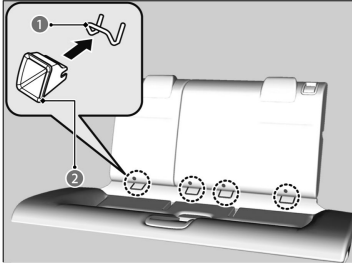
- [5] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- [6] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- [7] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- [8] Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- [9] Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

▼ **Other Top Tether Type**



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
- 2 Tether Strap Hook
- 3 Anchorage
- 4 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.

- 1 Lower Anchorage
- 2 Guide-cup

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants. The flexible type may not be available in your country.

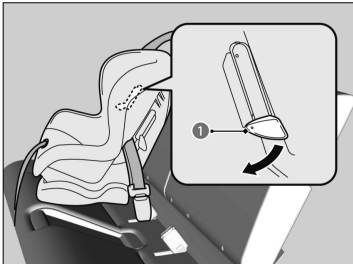
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



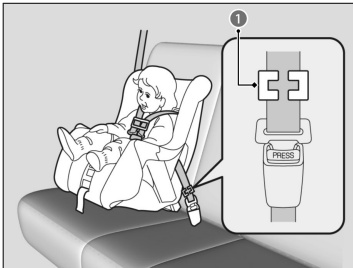
- [1] Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- [2] Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - » Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



1 Tab

- [3] Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- [4] Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - » When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

- [5] Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - » When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.



1 Locking Clip

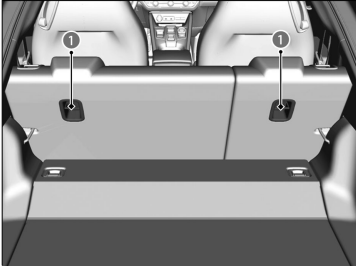
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- [6] Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- [7] Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- [8] Insert the latch plate into the buckle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Adding Security with a Tether



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position.

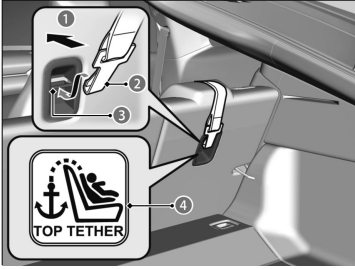
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1 Tether Anchorage Points

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint systems whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

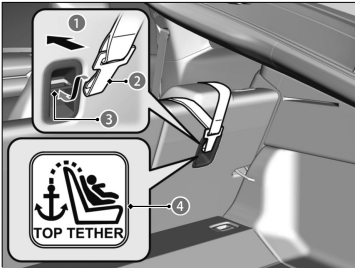
▼ **Straight Top Tether Type**



- [1] Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
- [2] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- [3] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
 - 2 Tether Strap Hook
 - 3 Anchorage
 - 4 Top Tether Anchorage
- Symbol

▼ **Other Top Tether Type**



- 1 Ahead of the Vehicle
 - 2 Tether Strap Hook
 - 3 Anchorage
 - 4 Top Tether Anchorage
- Symbol

Safety of Larger Children

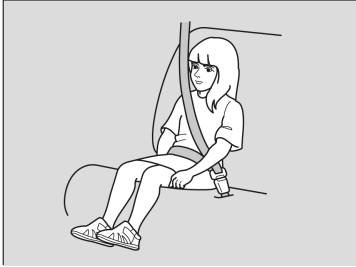
Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

Checklist



- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

- When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly. There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Airbags

About Your Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with four types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- Knee airbags: Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- Side airbags: Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.
- Side curtain airbags: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Airbag System Components

The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

▼ Except Australian, New Zealand and Taiwanese models

- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

▼ Australian, New Zealand and Taiwanese models

- Four side airbags. One for the driver, one for the front passenger, and two for the rear outboard seating positions. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

*: Not available on all models

▼ All models

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Seat belt tensioners for the front seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible. Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee, and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Front Airbags (SRS)

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

Housing Locations

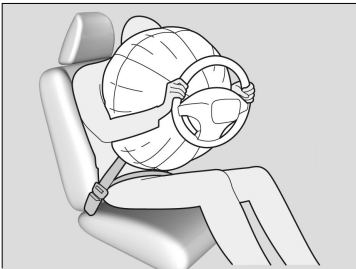
The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help to maximise the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

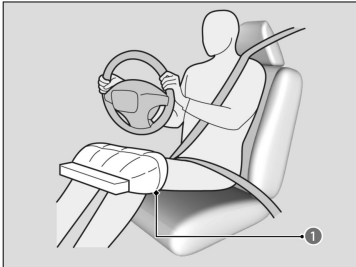
The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.

Housing Locations

The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.

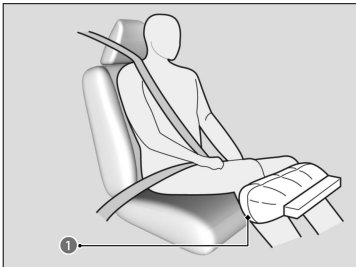
Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation



The driver's and front passenger's knee airbags deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbags respectively.

1 Knee Airbag



1 Knee Airbag

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.

■ When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed objects that cause a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant* during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

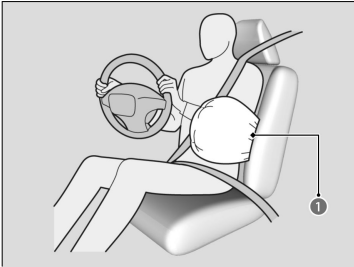
Housing Locations

Side airbags are housed in the outside edges of the driver and front passenger seat-backs and in the outer rear seat positions*.

Each is marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

*: Not available on all models

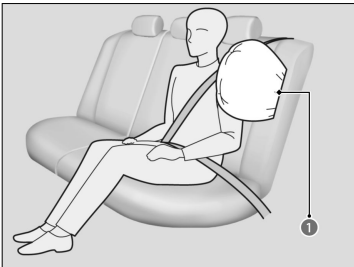
Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

1 Side Airbag

▼ Australian, New Zealand and Taiwanese models



1 Side Airbag

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.



Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.



Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag.

An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.



Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.



Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

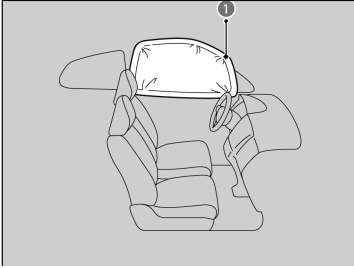


The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Housing Locations

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Side Curtain Airbag

When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

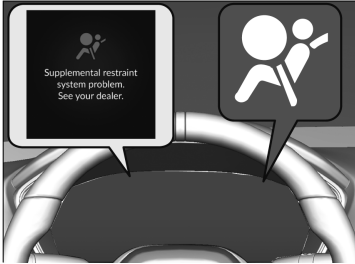
One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

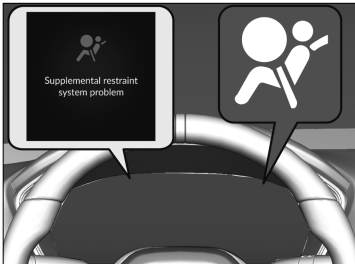
▼ Philippine models



- When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

▼ Except Philippine models



If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

- ! The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited. In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

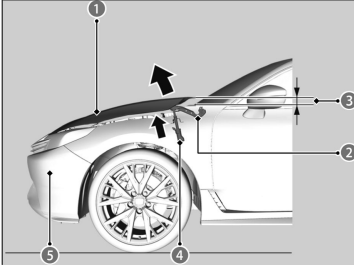
- ! We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Pop-up Hood System*

About the Pop-up Hood System



The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

The power units are located in the vehicle front side of the hinges.

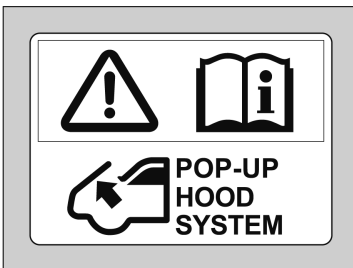
- 1 Bonnet
- 2 Hinge
- 3 Raises about 100mm
- 4 Power Unit Component
- 5 Pedestrian Impact Sensors

▼ Australian, New Zealand and Malaysian models

Pop-up Hood System label is found under the bonnet:

Label Locations ► P.68

▼ Australian, New Zealand and Malaysian models



The following conditions may also activate the system.

- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

*: Not available on all models

The system may not activate if your vehicle is:

- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

- If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

⚠ WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns.

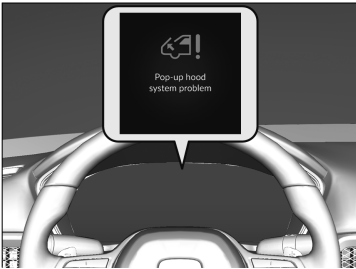
Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.



For the pop-up hood system to work properly:

- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.
- Always use the same size tyres as the original.

System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood



When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

 **WARNING**

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood.

This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Post-Collision Braking System

About the Post-Collision Braking System

When the airbag system is activated after a collision is detected, this system simultaneously applies the brakes and limits propulsion to reduce damage from a secondary collision.

This system may not be able to reduce damage from secondary collisions in all situations.

Its effectiveness depends on the circumstances of the collision.

When a collision occurs, confirm your surroundings, and carefully operate your vehicle as needed to park in a safe place.

Conditions for activation

The Post-Collision Braking System activates when the airbag system or automatic seat belt tensioners activate due to a frontal collision or side impact.

However, it will not activate if components of the system are damaged.

Conditions for cancellation

After the Post-Collision Braking System is activated, the system will be cancelled if either of the following conditions is met.

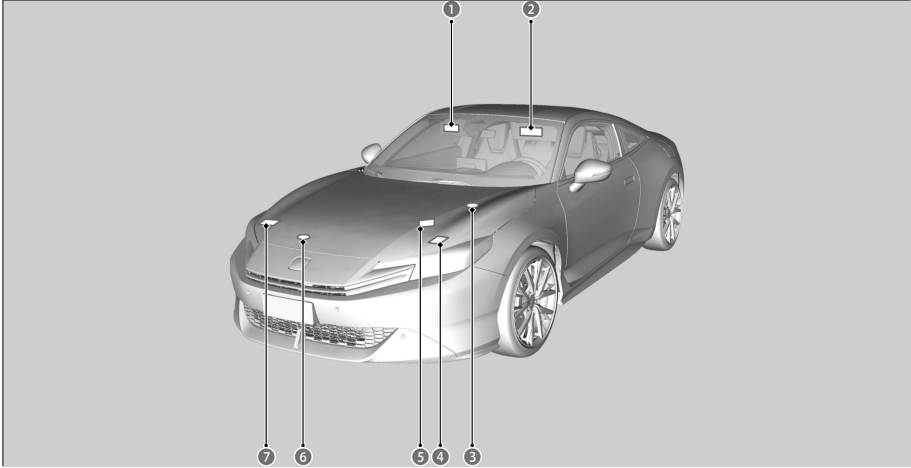
- The vehicle is stopped.
- You depress the accelerator pedal after releasing it.

Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1 Protecting Child Passenger
(Left-hand drive type)

[Protecting Child Passengers](#) ▶P.31

2 Protecting Child Passenger
(Right-hand drive type)

[Protecting Child Passengers](#) ▶P.31

3 High Voltage System
Coolant Tank Cap

4 Pop-up Hood*

[About the Pop-up Hood System](#) ▶P.64

5 12-volt battery

6 Radiator Cap

[Engine Coolant](#) ▶P.341

7 Air Conditioner*

[Air Conditioning](#) ▶P.356

*: Not available on all models

Key

Details on the Key

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door.

▼ Models with remote engine start

- You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

 Remote Engine Start*  P.111

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system and lock and unlock all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door.

In the following cases, activating the power system; locking/unlocking the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door may be inhibited; or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

- It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.

If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.



Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.



Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.



The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless Remote Reminder

■ When the power mode is in ON

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning indicator will display in the instrument panel, and warning buzzers will sound from both inside and outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning buzzer will sound from outside the vehicle.

- Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound.
- Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.
- If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.
- Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

■ Stopping the warning buzzer

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

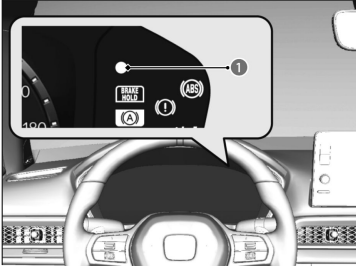
» If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.
- Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.



The immobilizer system indicator will blink in the instrument panel if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information when you have pressed the **POWER** button.

1 Immobilizer System Indicator

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the hatch or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access remote.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

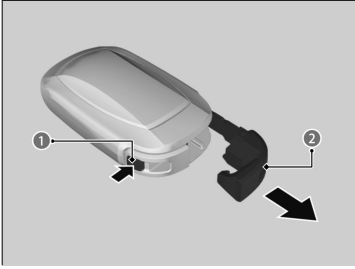
To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.

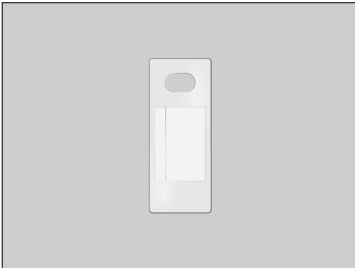
Removing the built-in key



To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

- 1 Release Button
- 2 Built-in Key

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

- If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.



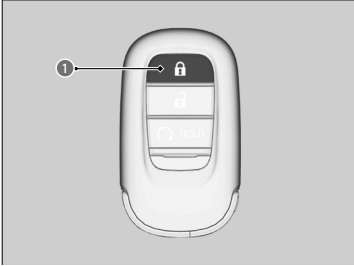
Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter

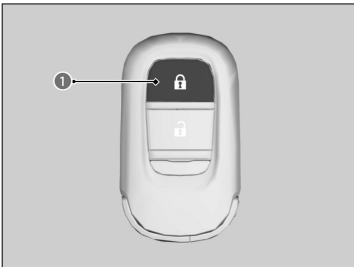
Locking the doors and hatch

▼ Models with remote engine start



1 Lock Button

▼ Models without remote engine start



1 Lock Button

Press the lock button.

Once:

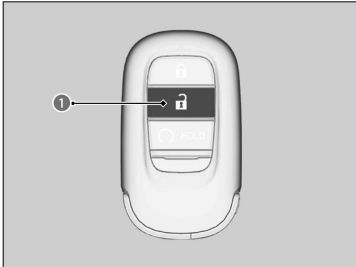
» Some exterior lights flash; all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door lock; door outer handles pop in; and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

» The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

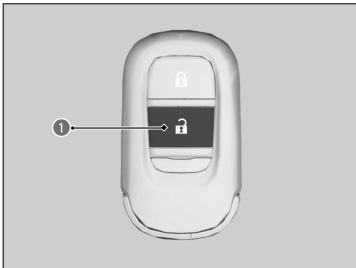
Unlocking the doors and hatch

▼ Models with remote engine start



1 Unlock Button

▼ Models without remote engine start



1 Unlock Button

Press the unlock button.

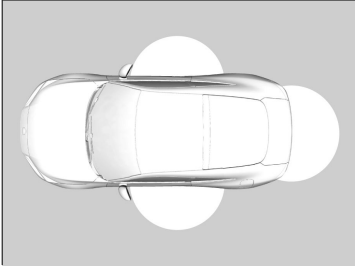
» Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors, hatch, and fuel fill door unlock, and door outer handles pop out.

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock and the door outer handle will automatically pop back in.

If the door outer handles were popped in or out while the power mode was set to OFF, they will pop back in or out if the lock/unlock button on the key is pressed.

The passenger's door outer handle will pop back in 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed or when the transmission is taken out of **P**.

Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, the door outer handles automatically pop in/out and you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and hatch.

You can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and hatch within a radius of about 80 cm from the outside door handle or hatch release button.

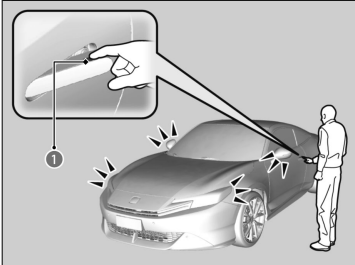
- The door may be locked/unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.



The light flash and beep settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶P.230

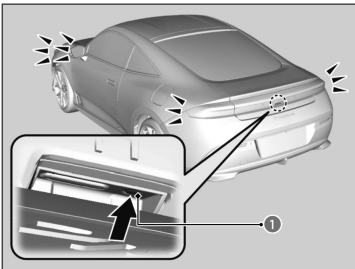
Locking the doors and hatch



Touch the door lock sensor on the door, or press the lock button on the hatch.

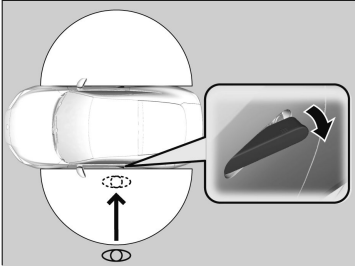
» Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors, fuel fill door, and hatch lock; door outer handles pop in if they are popped out; and the security system sets.

1 Door Lock Sensor



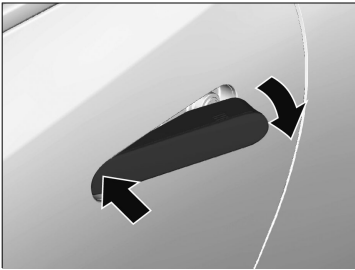
1 Lock Button

Unlocking the doors and hatch



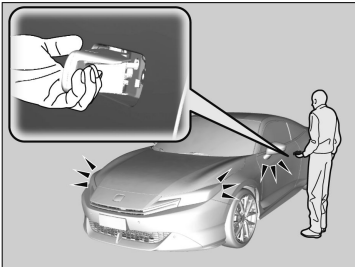
When you walk to the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the door outer handles will automatically pop out.

The auto pop-out function activates when all doors are locked, and the keyless remote is within a 2 m radius of the outside door outer handles.



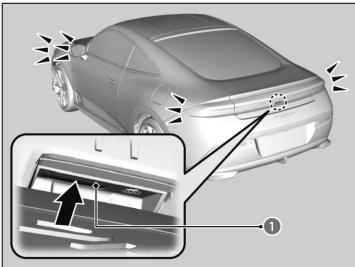
Pushing out the door outer handle manually:
Push the front side inwards.

- » When the door outer handle doesn't pop out automatically, push the front side inwards.



Grab the door handle:

- » All the doors, fuel fill door, and hatch unlock.
- » Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press and hold the hatch release button:

- » All the doors, fuel fill door, and hatch unlock.
- » Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.
- » Door outer handles pop out.

 Opening/Closing the Hatch ▶ P.105

1 Hatch Release Button

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors and hatch will automatically relock and the door outer handle of the doors will automatically pop back in.

You cannot lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system when the power mode is set to any mode other than VEHICLE OFF.

The auto pop-out function will be disabled if you keep the keyless remote within the detection range for more than about 2 minutes after the door handle has popped out. If this function is disabled, push out the handle manually or use the unlock button on the keyless remote.

If you walk away from the vehicle when the power system is on, the auto pop-out function will not work.

If you lock the doors and hatch, and take the keyless remote out of the 2 m detection range and then bring it back into the range within 10 seconds, the auto pop-out function will not work. In this case, pop out the door handle manually or use the remote transmitter.

If, however, you bring the keyless remote back into range after 10 seconds, the handles will automatically pop out.

Door outer handles will pop back in 30 seconds after the driver's door is closed or when the transmission is taken out of **P**.

If the vehicle is left for more than 8 days, the auto pop-out function will not work. In this case, unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter.

If the door outer handle is popped out and the keyless remote is taken out of the 2 m detection range, the handle will pop back in after 30 seconds.



The auto pop-out function can be customized using the audio/information screen.

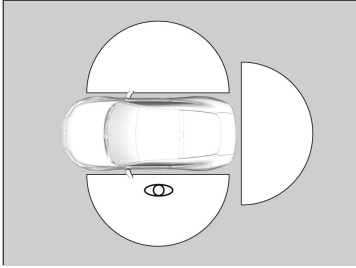
[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) P.230

Conditions under which you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and hatch

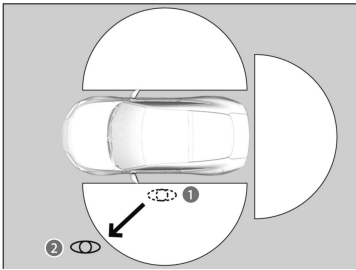
- If you grip a door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking or locking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and hatch with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, or hatch.

Locking the Doors and Hatch (Walk Away Auto Lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and hatch closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door will automatically lock.



- [1] While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
- » The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.



- [2] Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
- » Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors, hatch, and fuel fill door will then lock; and door outer handles pop in.

- When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

- After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.
 - » The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
 - » You are located too close to the vehicle.
 - » The keyless remote is put inside the hatch.
- If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.
- » When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.
- The auto lock function is set to **OFF** as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to **ON** using the audio/information screen.



If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

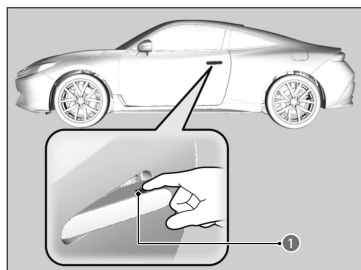
To temporarily deactivate the function:

- [1] Set the power mode to **OFF**.
- [2] Open the driver's door.
- [3] Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock→Unlock→Lock→Unlock.
» The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to **ON**.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Lock Presetting



1 Door Lock Sensor

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors and hatch.

Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

- [1] Touch the door lock sensor on the driver's door or press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
» Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated, and door outer handles pop in.
- [2] Close all doors and the hatch.
» Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and hatch are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

- Lock presetting will be reset if a door is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

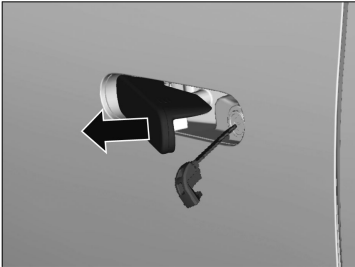


You can turn this function on and off.

🔍 How to Customize the Vehicle Settings ▶ P.230

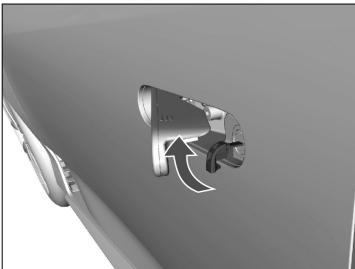
Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is behind the door handle.



Pull and hold the outer handle. Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder completely from below the handle and then turn it.

» When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors, hatch and fuel fill door unlock at the same time.

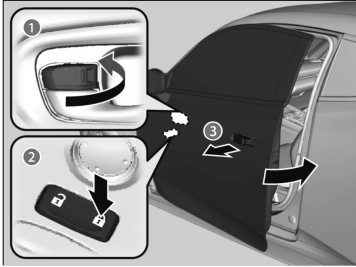


If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.

Locking the driver's door



Push the lock tab forward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **3**. Close the door, then release the handle.

» When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time.

Locking the passenger's doors

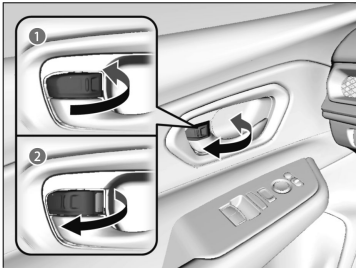
Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

Lockout Prevention System

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the lock tab



Locking a door: Push the lock tab forward.

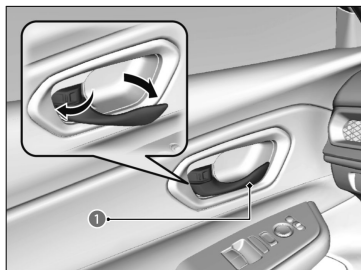
Unlocking a door: Pull the lock tab rearward.

» When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, hatch and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

1 To lock

2 To unlock

Unlocking using the driver's door inner handle



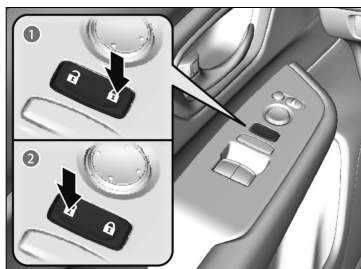
- Pull the driver's door inner handle.
- » The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

1 Inner Handle

! The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

When you open any door from inside the vehicle by using the inner handle, the door outer handles pop out.

Using the master door lock switch



- Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors, hatch and fuel fill door.
- » The door outer handles will also pop in or out when the master door lock switch is pressed.

- 1 To Lock
- 2 To Unlock

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

*: Not available on all models

Drive Lock Mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15km/h.



You can turn off or change to another auto door locking setting.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

Park Unlock Mode

All doors and the hatch unlock when the transmission is put into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.



You can turn off or change to another auto door unlocking setting.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

What to Do If

Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto door lock operating range before the door completely closes.

[Locking the Doors and Hatch \(Walk Away Auto Lock\)](#) ▶ P.79

Why is the keyless remote not working properly?

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

[Replacing the Remote Battery](#) ▶ P.365

▼ Models with remote engine start

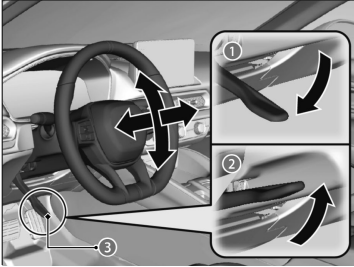
If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.

This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- 1 To adjust
- 2 To lock
- 3 Lever

- [1] While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
 - » The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
- [2] Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - » Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- [3] Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - » After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

⚠ WARNING

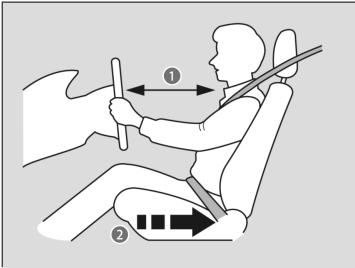
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Seats

Adjusting the Seat

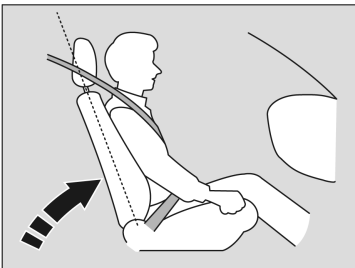
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

- 1 Allow sufficient space.
- 2 Move back.



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

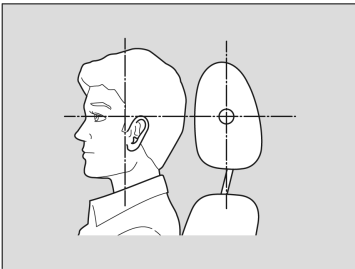
Head Restraints

Head restraints are equipped to the front seats.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Adjusting the front seat head restraint positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

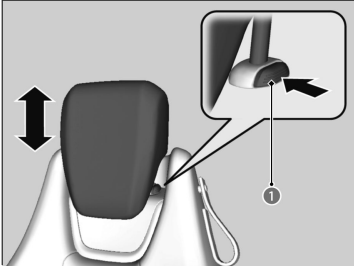
⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Adjusting the Front Seat Positions

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



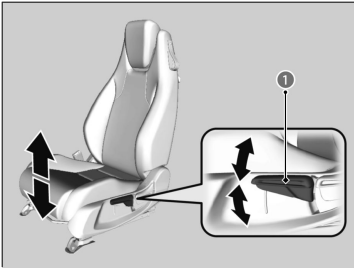
To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

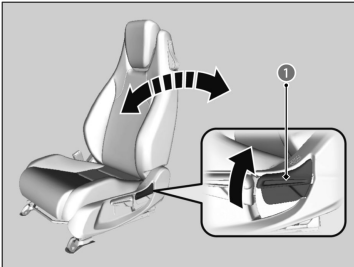
1 Release Button



Height adjustment (driver's seat only):

Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

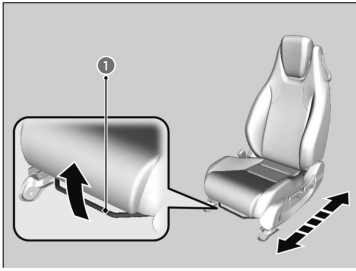
1 Lever



Seat-back angle adjustment:

Pull up the lever to change the angle.

1 Lever

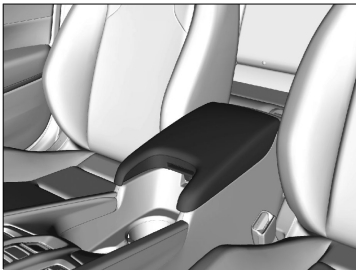


Horizontal position adjustment:

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

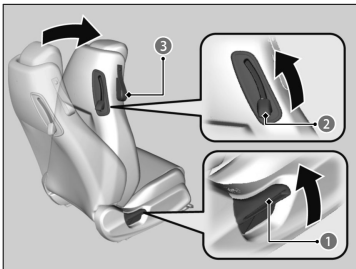
1 Bar

Using the front seat armrest



The console compartment can be used as an armrest.

Rear Seat Access



Pull the lever up to fold down the seat-back.

» You cannot slide a seat from the back. Slide it from the front when necessary.

- 1 Lever (for front seat)
- 2 Lever (for rear seat)
- 3 Strap

Watch your feet when entering or exiting the vehicle.

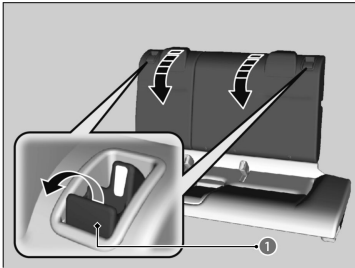
Once a seat is adjusted, rock it back and forth to make sure that it is securely locked in place.

! Do not grip the front seat's strap when entering or exiting the vehicle. This can result in damage.

Rear Seats

Folding down the rear seats

The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

1 Release Lever

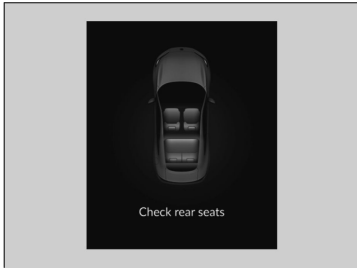
! WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

! Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It is activated when power mode is changed from VEHICLE ON to OFF.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert sounds when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.
- The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. It only detects changes in power mode.



You can turn off the notification setting.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Child Passengers ▶ P.31

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

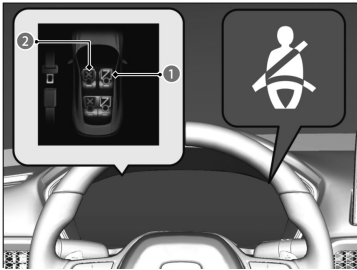
WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

! Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

! If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt reminder informs you that the occupant's seat belt is not being fastened. The warning will disappear when you wear your seat belt.

- ① Fastened
- ② Unfastened

When driving with an unfastened seat belt, the buzzer will stop when the vehicle is stopped or a certain period of time has passed.

- » Even when no one is sitting in the front passenger seat, the system may react if luggage is placed on the seat.
- » The system may not react if a child or small person is seated in the front passenger seat, or if a cushion is being used.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

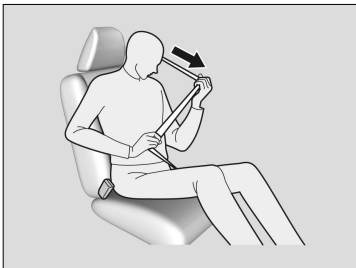
The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety. The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal or side collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the driver's and passenger's knee airbag.

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

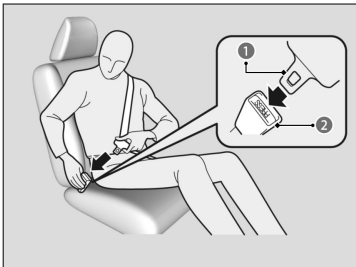
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

 Adjusting the Seat ▶ P.86



[1] Pull the seat belt out slowly.



[2] Insert the latch plate **①** into the buckle **②**, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

- » Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.



- [3] Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
- [4] If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

- ! If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in. Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

[Q About Your Seat Belts](#) ▶ P.92

- ! No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

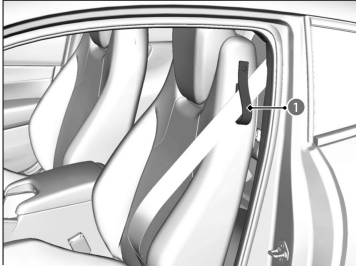
⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

- ! Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

- ❗ Putting the front seat's seat belt through the strap makes it easier to use the seat belt.
- ❗ Do not use the strap if the front seat is to be adjusted to where the strap would be further back than the pillar.
- ❗ If the seat belt does not roll back up properly, do it manually by hand.
- ❗ Do not apply strong pressure to the strap when operating the seat-back, or when accessing or exiting the rear seats.



1 Strap

Advice for Pregnant Women



Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips (see illustration).

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

- ❗ To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:
 - When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
 - When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - » If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

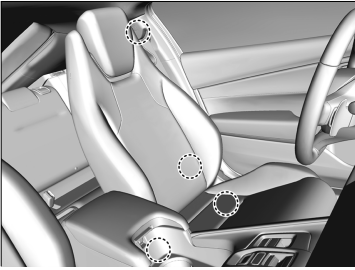
WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points

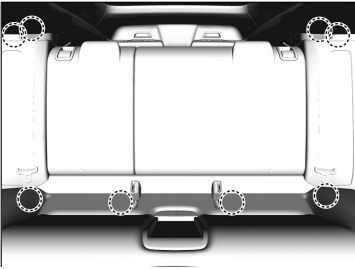
▼ Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images.

The front and rear seats have lap/shoulder belts.

▼ Rear Seat



Mirrors

About Mirrors

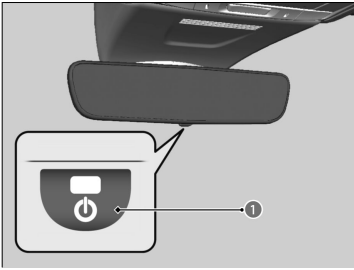
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



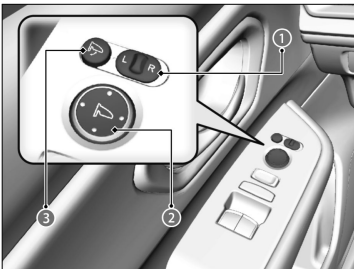
When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

» The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

1 AUTO Button

Power Door Mirrors

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



1 L/R Selector Switch:

Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

2 Mirror Position Adjustment Switch:

Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

3 Folding Button:

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

When the door is locked or unlocked via the remote transmitter or keyless access system, the door mirrors will automatically fold in or return to their previous position, even when the power mode is set to OFF.

Folding in the door mirrors

- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter or touch the door lock sensor on the door.
 - » The mirrors start folding in automatically.

Folding out the door mirrors

- Unlock all doors and the hatch using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.
 - » The mirrors start folding out automatically.
- If you use the folding button to fold the door mirrors, the auto folding door mirror function will not work.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.



You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

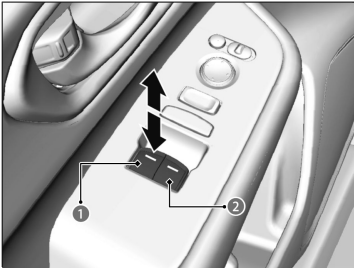
Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window.



- ① Driver's Window Switch
- ② Front Passenger's Window Switch

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

▼ Oceanian models

- The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Opening either door cancels this function.

▼ Except Oceanian models

- The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

- Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

▼ All models

Auto Reverse

» If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverses direction.

If the auto reverse function is activated due to a malfunction or impact caused by the road surface or driving conditions and the window cannot be closed automatically, you can close it by continuously pulling up the switch briefly.

⚠ WARNING

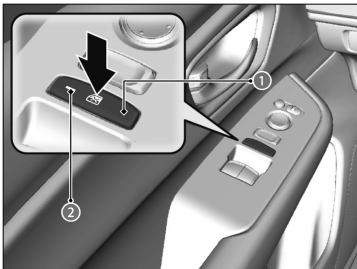
Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

- The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.
- The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Power Window Lock Button

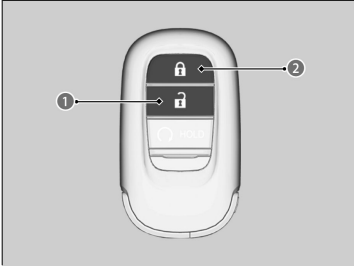


When the power window lock button is set to ON (indicator on), any window other than that on the driver's side will not operate.

- ① Power Window Lock Button
- ② Indicator

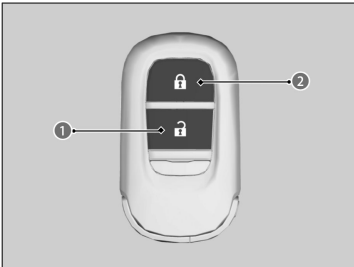
Opening/Closing* the Windows with the Remote

▼ Models with remote engine start



- 1 Unlock Button
- 2 Lock Button

▼ Models without remote engine start



- 1 Unlock Button
- 2 Lock Button

To open

Press the unlock button 1, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To Close*

Press the lock button 2, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.



You can turn off or on to open/close* the windows with the keyless remote setting using the audio/information screen.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

*: Not available on all models

Hatch

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
 - » If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:

- » Avoid possible damage.
- » Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.


 Carbon Monoxide Gas ▶ P.27


- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.


WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

-  Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the luggage area when closing the hatch.

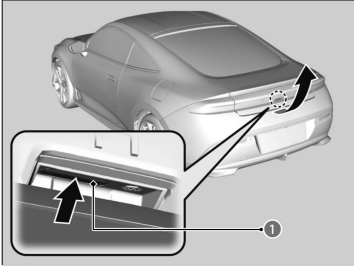
-  When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

-  Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Hatch

Using the Hatch Release Button

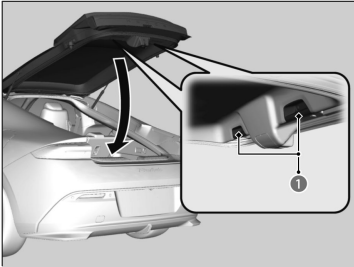
Opening the hatch



When all the doors are unlocked, the hatch is unlocked. Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

1 Hatch Release Button

Closing the hatch



To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

1 Inner Handle

Load Limit

About Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

 About Specifications ▶ P.401

▼ Australian and New Zealand models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

 About Specifications ▶ P.401

WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Driving Operation

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button	109
Turn on Power System	110
Turn off Power System	111
Remote Engine Start*	111
What to Do If	113

Shifting

About Shift Operation	114
-----------------------	-----

Braking

Foot Brake	118
Parking Brake	118
Automatic Brake Hold	121
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	124
Emergency Stop Signal	124
What to Do If	125

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive	126
-------------------	-----

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped	128
--------------	-----

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera	130
------------------------	-----

Refueling

Fuel Information	132
How to Refuel	133
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	134

Turn Signals • Light Switches

Turn Signals	136
Headlights/Position Lights	136

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers	146
What to Do If	147

Defroster

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	149
What to Do If	152

Driving Features

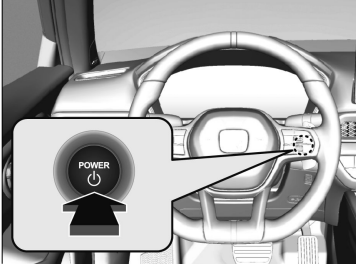
Drive Mode System	154
Deceleration Paddle Selector	156
Honda S+ Shift	158
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	159
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	160
Agile Handling Assist	161
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*	162

*: Not available on all models

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press the **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF → ACCESSORY → ON → VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

ACCESSORY:

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

ON:

All accessories can be used.

ON mode:

The **POWER** button is on (in red), if the power system is on.

- Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

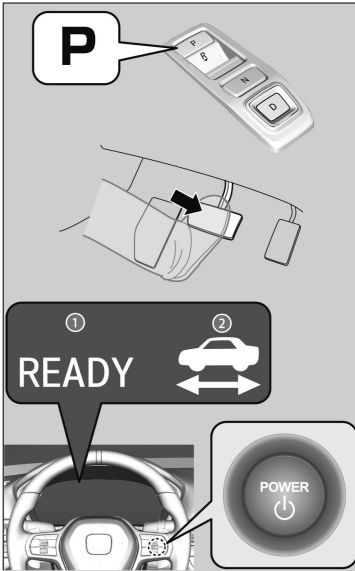
Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Turn on Power System



[1] Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

Parking Brake ► P.118

[2] Depress the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button while the transmission is in **P**.

- » The **READY** indicator (1) / (ready) indicator (2) comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
- » Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.
- » If the outside temperature is extremely low, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the gauge.

1 Philippine models

2 Except Philippine models

- Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.
- The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.
- When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.
- Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn the power system on. If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.
- The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

Immobilizer System ► P.70

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the powertrain.



To prevent unexpected accidents, do not depress the accelerator pedal when turning on the power system.

Turn off Power System

While the vehicle is completely stopped, put the transmission into **P**, then press the **POWER** button.

- » Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Remote Engine Start*

You can remotely turn on the power system using the keyless remote. Depending on the outside temperature, functions such as the climate control system, rear defogger, and each of the heating features will also be activated.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ▶ P.149

Using the Front seat Heater ▶ P.174

- If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide. Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

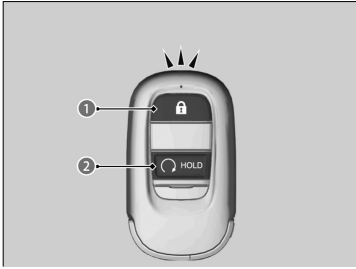
Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.





Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws. The remote engine start may violate local laws.



*: Not available on all models

To turn the power system on



Press the  button (1), then press and hold the  button (2).

- » Some exterior lights flash once.
- » If the power system is turned on successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.
- » If the power system does not turn on, exterior lights will not flash. Go within the range, and try again.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

- » Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.


To turn the power system off

Press the  button for one second.

- » If the power system is turned off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.
- » When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The power system will not be turned off. Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start Limitations

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled the remote engine start setting.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The shift position is in a position other than .
- The bonnet is open, or any door or hatch is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The telematics unit malfunctions.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.

The power system may be turned off while it is on if:

- The security system alarm is not set.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the hatch is unlocked.
- The shift position is in other than **P**.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp comes on.

What to Do If


If the keyless remote battery is weak

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

 [If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak](#) ▶ P.381

When the power system does not start

A pre-registered key is required.

 [Immobilizer System](#) ▶ P.70

If the keyless remote is set on the instrument panel, in a storage box, or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

Why does the brake pedal sink down slightly when the power mode is turned on?

This is related to the activation of the electric brake system, and it is normal.

Why does the exhaust system sound abnormal, or why is there an exhaust gas or petrol smell in the vehicle?

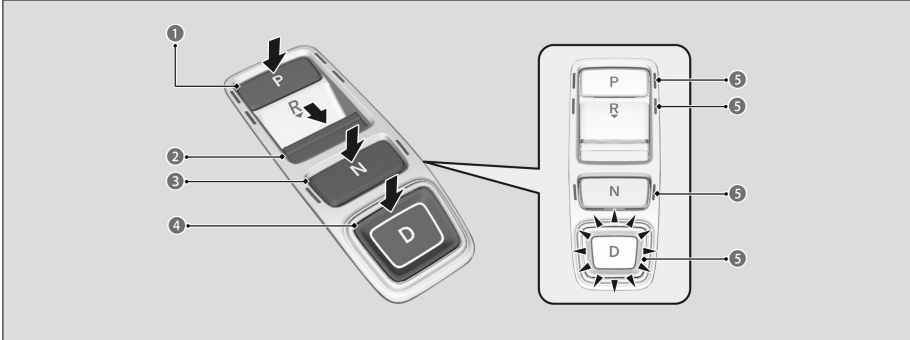
There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Why is a motor sound coming from under the bonnet?

Immediately after turning the power system on or while driving, you may hear a motor sound coming from under the bonnet due to a system check.

Shifting

About Shift Operation



1 P Park: Press the **P button.**

» Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

2 R Reverse: Press the **R button.**

» Used when reversing.

» The beeper sounds once when you change to **R**.

3 N Neutral: Press the **N button.**

» Transmission is not locked.

4 D Drive: Press the **D button.**

» Used for normal driving.

» The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

» The deceleration paddle selector can be used while locked when the **M** display is on.

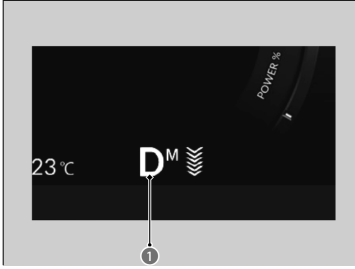
5 Shift Button Indicator

Precautions when parking:

Park your vehicle in a safe place with the power mode in ON, then apply the brakes and press the **P** button to put the transmission in **P**.

» The indicators on the sides of the **P** button come on.

Gauge display



1 Shift Position Indicator/Transmission System Indicator

- Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before and after selecting a shift button.
- When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures -30°C, there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed.



You can turn the reverse alert sound on/off.

[Customized Features](#) ▶ P.226



To avoid damage to the drive system, only shift between forward and reverse when the brake pedal is depressed and the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the gauge.



If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

Automatic **P** Position Function

■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h or slower.
 - The shift position is in a position other than **P**.
 - You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
- » If you manually change the shift position from **P** with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to **P** once you release the brake pedal.

! The system will automatically shift to **P** when the conditions are met, but in the interest of safety, you should always put the shift position in **P** before opening the driver's door when parking.

 When Stopped ▶ P.128

! If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to **P**, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

■ When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the shift position is in a position other than **P**, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

N Position Holding Mode (Car Wash Mode)

With the power system on:

[1] Press and hold the brake pedal.

[2] Select **N**.

[3] Within 5 seconds, press **POWER** button.

- » This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant does not remain in the vehicle.
- » The shift position remains in **N** with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to **P**.


Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode. The **P** indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF.


Note that the shift position may not stay in **N** position while any of the following indicators is on:

- Transmission system indicator
- Power system indicator
- 12-volt battery charging system indicator

Restrictions on Selecting a Shift Position

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

- » When in a safe condition, select the appropriate shift position with the vehicle is stopped and depressing the brake pedal.
- » Make sure that the **READY** indicator*1/  (ready) indicator*2 comes on.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/ changes to:
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	P
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.		
N	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.	Other shift position	N
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.		
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R	N
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D	N
R , N , or D	The vehicle is moving.	P	N
P or N	The READY indicator is not on.*1  (ready) indicator is not on.*2	A shift position other than P or N	P or N

*1: Philippine models

*2: Except Philippine models

Braking

Foot Brake

The foot brake is used to slow down or stop your vehicle, and is operated by a brake pedal.

» When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear an operating sound from the engine compartment.



Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water.

If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.



If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



Do not constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, as it builds up heat.

If you constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, it will build up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking. Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

» When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard.

Parking Brake

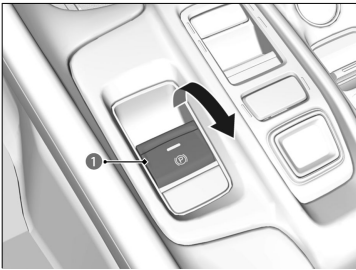
Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.

- You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.
- The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.
- You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

Emergency Power System On ▶ P.382

- If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

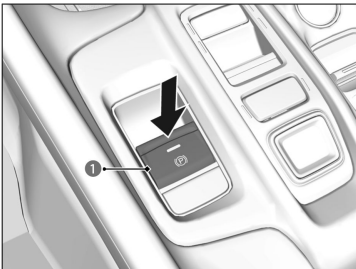
To Apply Manually



The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in. Pull the electric parking brake switch (1) up gently and securely.

- » The indicator in the switch comes on.
- » The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

To Release Manually

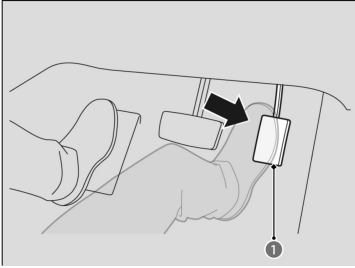


Depress the brake pedal, then press the electric parking brake switch (1).

- » The indicator in the switch goes off.
- » The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

- The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.
- Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

To Release Automatically



Gently depress the accelerator pedal (1) to start the vehicle.

» The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator



If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the parking brake will not release automatically.

Automatic Parking Brake Feature

The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

» The default setting for this feature is OFF.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature


With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- [1] Change the shift position to **P**.
- [2] Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - » Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
- [3] Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- [4] When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.

- » Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
- » One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
- » To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle has been stopped for more than 10 minutes by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the power mode is turned off while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system while it is activated.

 In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied. When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated. Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash, when having your vehicle towed, etc., deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Temporarily deactivate the automatic parking brake feature

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

- [1] Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- [2] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - » Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - » Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
 - » To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

⚠ WARNING

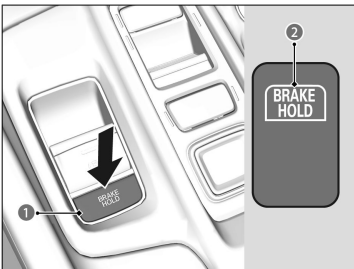
Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal. If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

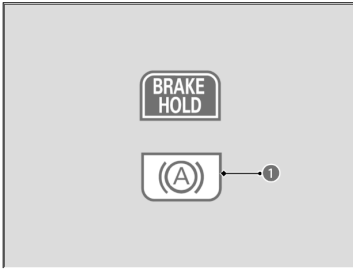
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving. If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death. Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Turning on the System

- [1] Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button (1).
- » The automatic brake hold system indicator (2) comes on, and then the system goes into standby mode.



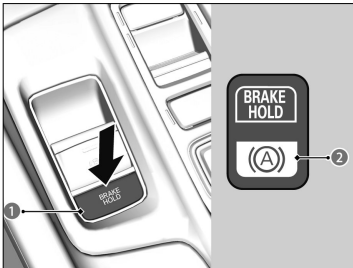
[2] Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop while the transmission into **D**.

- » The automatic brake hold indicator (1) comes on, and then the automatic brake hold operates. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- » The automatic brake is held for up to 10 minutes.

The next time the power mode is set to ON, if the driver's seat belt is fastened, the system will return to standby mode.

! Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

System OFF



When you press the automatic brake hold button (1), the system is turned off. If the indicator (2) is lit up, turn off the system while depressing the brake pedal.

If the system is turned off, it will remain off the next time the power system is started.

The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

The system will automatically cancel and the parking brake will be applied when the following conditions are met:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps to maintain steering control and vehicle posture by preventing the wheels from locking up during sudden braking or braking on slippery surfaces when driving at speeds above 10 km/h.

- » The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.
- » You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”
- The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down.
- The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.



The ABS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.



If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle’s decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.



The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

What to Do If


Why do I hear a screeching sound when I depress the brake pedal?

To satisfy the performance under a wide range of driving conditions, a high performance braking system is equipped on your vehicle. You may hear the brake squeal under certain conditions, such as vehicle speed, deceleration, humidity, and so on.

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive


- [1] Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, select the shift position.
 - » If you turned on the power system with the remote engine start feature*, depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button before changing the shift position.
- [2] Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.
 - » The parking brake will release automatically. You can also release it by operating the parking brake switch.


 Parking Brake ▶ P.118

When the power system was turned on with remote engine start feature*, the power system stops when the shift position is taken out of **P** before the **POWER** button is pressed.

To start driving, restart the power system and follow step 1.

 Turn on Power System ▶ P.110


 Do not select **N** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

 As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.


Check the vehicle status with the **READY** indicator*¹/  (ready) indicator*² indicator.


*1: Philippine models

*2: Except Philippine models

 If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

*: Not available on all models

 During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

 Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors to allow for proper break-in.

Hill Start Assist System



Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

» Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Creeping

This vehicle creeps when the shift position is in **D** or **R**.

» Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

 Automatic Brake Hold  P.121

Kickdown

▼ When Honda S+ Shift is ON

If you depress the accelerator pedal fully while driving with the shift position in **D**, acceleration will increase similarly to kickdown in an automatic transmission vehicle.

» Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Parking Your Vehicle


When Stopped


- [1] Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
- [2] With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- [3] Change the shift position to **P**.
 - » Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

WARNING


The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

 Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

 The following may damage the driveline or cause the power system to overheat and fail:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.
- Holding the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

 Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.



In extremely cold temperatures, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving.

If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera

When the shift position is changed to **R**, the vehicle's rear view is automatically displayed on the screen.

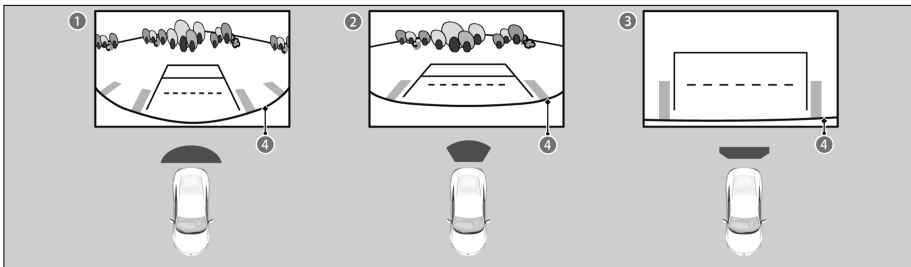
- If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.
- The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.



If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Switching Camera Modes

You can view three different camera modes on the screen. Select the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

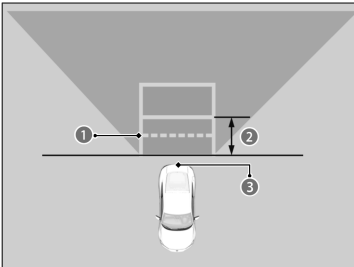


- ① Wide view mode
- ② Normal view mode
- ③ Top down view mode
- ④ **Bumper**

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you change the shift position to **R**.

- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power mode, Wide view mode will be displayed the next time you turn on the power mode and change the shift position to **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and about 10 seconds elapsed after you changed the shift position out of **R**, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you change the shift position to **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and change the shift position back to **R** within about 10 seconds after you changed it out of **R**, Top down view mode will be activated.

Distance between the vehicle and guideline



- 1 Approx. 50 cm
- 2 Approx. 1 m
- 3 Camera



Both the **Fixed Guideline** (which indicates distance between your vehicle and the rear surroundings) and **Dynamic Guideline** (which moves based on steering operation) can be turned on and off.

[Q Customized Features](#) ▶ P.226



The guidelines should be used as a reference only.

The positions/distances indicated by the guidelines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors.

Refueling

Fuel Information

Fuel Recommendation

▼ Australian, New Zealand, Malaysian and Philippine models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

▼ Indonesian models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

▼ Taiwanese models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 92 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.



Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

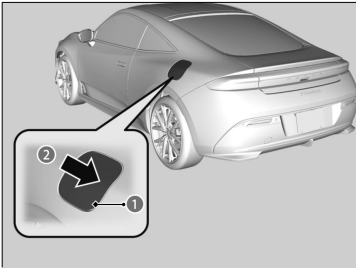
Fuel Tank Capacity

40 L

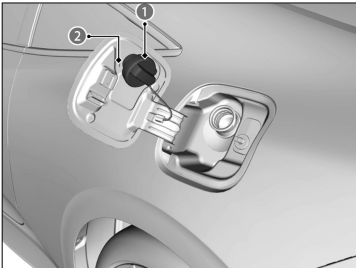
Engine Cleaner

Fuel quality varies by region. Add genuine injector cleaner agent according to the time and distance instructions in the maintenance schedule. Please use a genuine Honda injector cleaner agent. If not available, please use a PEA (polyetheramine) based cleaning agent instead. Regular use of injector cleaner may be needed in countries or regions without a maintenance schedule. Consult your dealer for more information.

How to Refuel



- [1] Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
- [2] Turn off the power system and then unlock the driver's door.
 - » The fuel fill door (1) on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
- [3] Press and release the area indicated by the arrow (2). You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
- [4] Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
- [5] Remove the fuel fill cap (1) slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
- [6] Place the fuel fill cap in the holder (2).



- [7] Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
- [8] When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature
- [9] After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - » Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

- Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

- Using the Walk Away Auto Lock feature will also lock the fuel fill door. Always make sure both the driver's door and fuel fill door are unlocked before attempting to open the fuel fill door.

 Locking the Doors and Hatch (Walk Away Auto Lock)  P.79

WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive.

You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

CAUTION

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped.

Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO₂ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100 × Liters of fuel ÷ Kilometers driven = L per 100 km^{*1}

Kilometres driven ÷ Litres of fuel = Kilometres per Litre

*1: Except Australian and New Zealand models

Maintenance and fuel economy

You can optimise your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle.

Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult the service information provided for your vehicle.

 Maintenance Schedule  P.333

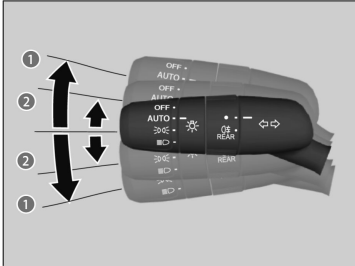
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

 Recommended Engine Oil ▶ P.338

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Turn Signals • Light Switches

Turn Signals



Turn signal (1)

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

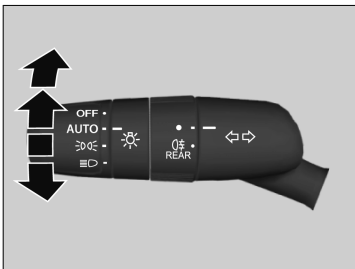
» The turn signal indicator will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

One-touch turn signal (2)

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink three times.

» If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Headlights/Position Lights



The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

They can also be switched on and off manually.

» The lights on indicator in the instrument panel will turn on.

The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in **P** and the parking brake is applied.

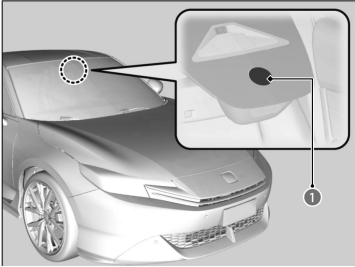
The lights will come back on automatically when:

- » The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- » The transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released.



When the position lights are on, the rear side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

The light sensor is in the location shown below.

Do not cover the light sensor.



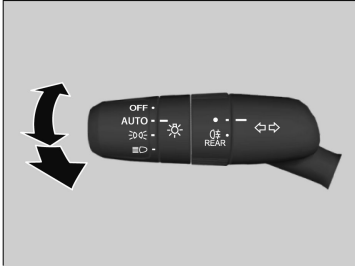
1 Light Sensor

! When the light switch is turned to  or  and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

! When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.


! If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

High Beams



When the headlights are on, push the lever forward.

Pull the lever back to return to low beams.

The  high beam indicator in the instrument panel will turn on when the high beams are on.

- Flashing the high beams: Pull the lever back, and release it.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.



You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door.

If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off.

If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

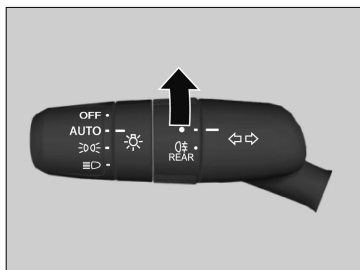


You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

Rear Fog Light*

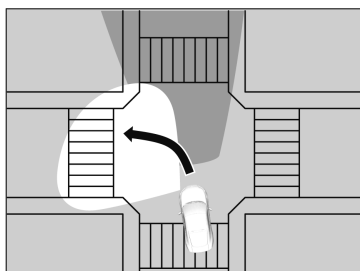
Can be used when the headlights are on.



To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch to .
The indicator comes on.

Active Cornering Lights*



Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or putting the transmission in **R**.

- You move the transmission into **R**.
- The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in **R**, move it to another position momentarily.

Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights comes on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO** or .
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

*: Not available on all models

Auto High-Beam*

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

How to use the auto high-beam

Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.




- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

1 Auto High-Beam Indicator

2 Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.

*: Not available on all models

- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.



How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System: You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 28 km/h or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.


Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it.

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

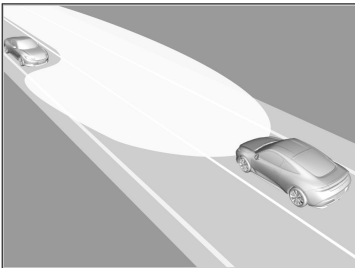
- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Adaptive Driving Beam*



When driving at night, the front wide view camera detects light sources such as street lights or the lights of an oncoming or preceding vehicle. The system automatically switches the headlights between low and high beam depending on the situation. In addition, the system automatically adjusts the light distribution of the high beams in order to reduce glare for preceding and oncoming vehicles.

The system also increases the coverage of the low beams when the low beams are on and the vehicle speed is 40 km/h or less, improving visibility to the left and right.

How to Use the adaptive driving beam

Activating the system

The adaptive driving beam indicator comes on, and the system begins adjusting the light distribution of the high beams when all of the following conditions are met.

*: Not available on all models




- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

① Adaptive Driving Beam

Indicator

② Light Switch

If the adaptive driving beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

The adaptive driving beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

Front Wide View Camera ▶P.249

For the adaptive driving beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

In the following cases, the adaptive driving beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, windscreen frost, etc.).

- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The adaptive driving beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.



How to turn off the Adaptive Driving Beam System: You can turn the adaptive driving beam system on and off.

 [How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

Automatically adjusting the light distribution

The system starts to automatically adjust the light distribution of the high beams once the vehicle speed is 10 km/h or higher, and the light distribution changes depending on vehicle speed, or under the following conditions:

- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

If the vehicle speed slows to 6 km/h or lower, the system stops automatically adjusting the light distribution and switches the headlights to low beam.

Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedure below.

Note that when you do this, the adaptive driving beam indicator will turn off and the adaptive driving beam will be deactivated.


Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it.

» To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, follow either of the procedures below and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

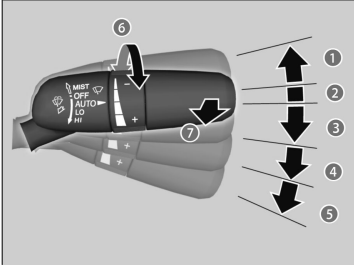
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

- » To reactivate the adaptive driving beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the adaptive driving beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1 MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

2 OFF

3 AUTO

4 LO

Low speed wipe

5 HI

High speed wipe

6 AUTO sensitivity adjustment

You can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor

: Low sensitivity

: High sensitivity

7 Pull to use washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you.

When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

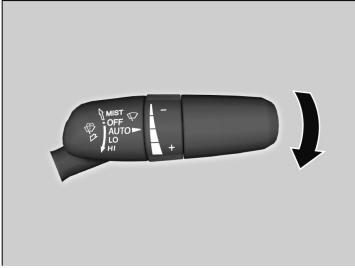
! When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.

Q Lifting the Wiper Arms ▶ P.347

! Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

! Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

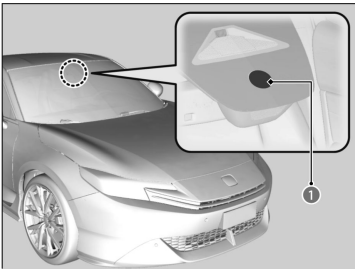
Automatic Intermittent Wipers



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

» If the sensor reacts to something other than rain and the wipers operate unnecessarily, you can stop them by moving the lever to the **OFF** position.



The rainfall sensor is located at the top of the middle of the front windscreen.

1 Rainfall Sensor

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

What to Do If

When the wipers are not moving

The wiper motor may stop temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

When the wiper blades are stuck to the windscreen glass due to freezing in cold weather

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

■ When snow has accumulated on the wipers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

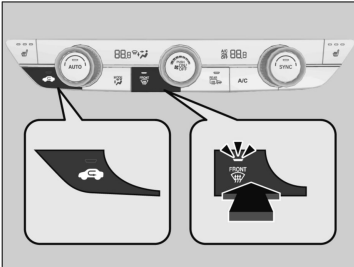
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.


Defroster


Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

When defogging the front or side windows

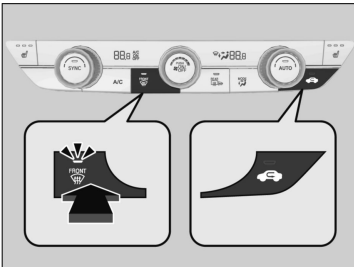
▼ Taiwanese models



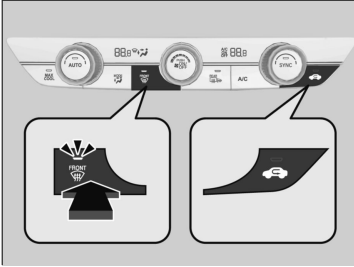
Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.


Press the  button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.


▼ Australian and New Zealand models




▼ **Philippine models**

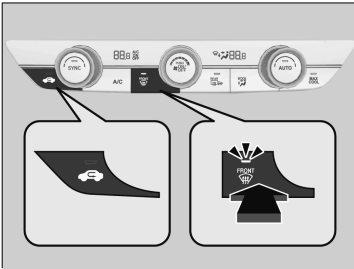


Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on.

Press the  button to switch the fresh air mode (indicator off).

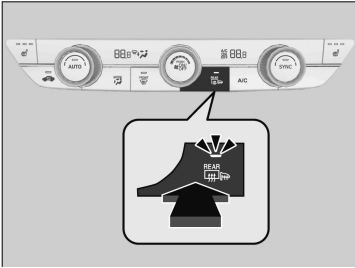
Press the  button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.

▼ **Indonesian and Malaysian models**



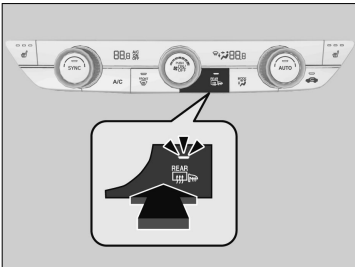
Rear demister/heated door mirror button

▼ Left-hand Drive Type



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

▼ Right-hand Drive Type



- The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.
- When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

! For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

! After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

! Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit. When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.



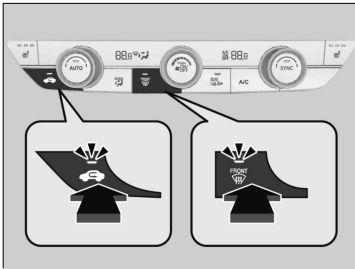
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted.


This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

What to Do If

To rapidly defrost the windows

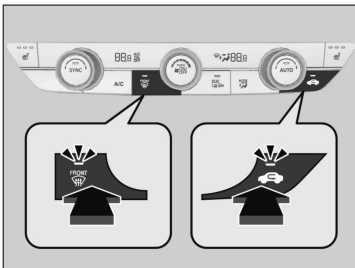
▼ Taiwanese models



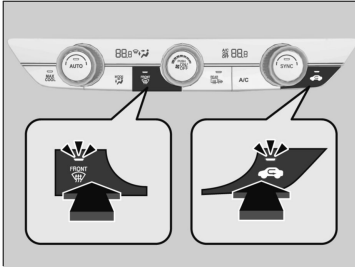
[1] Press the  button.

[2] Press the  button (indicator on).

▼ Australian and New Zealand models

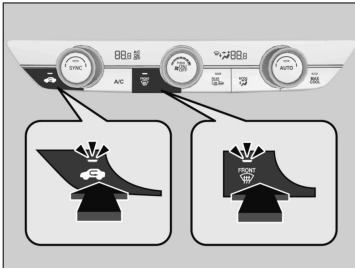


▼ **Philippine models**



- [1] Press the  button.
- [2] Press the  button (indicator on).

▼ **Indonesian and Malaysian models**



■ **When the side window gets fogged up**

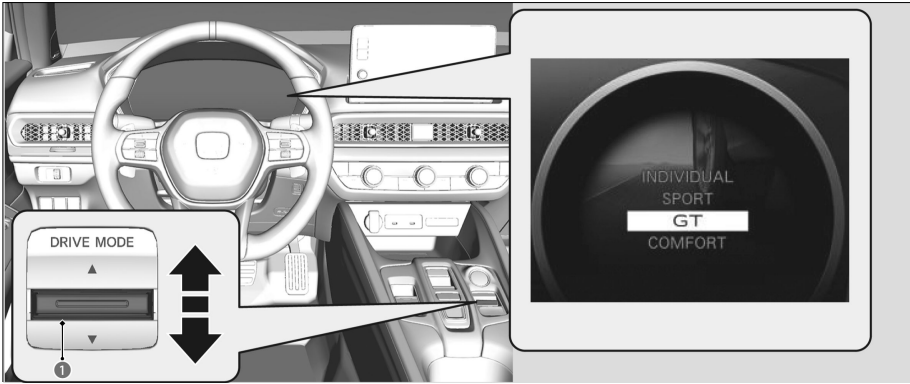
Adjust the nearest climate control vent so that it blows directly on the side window.

Driving Features

Drive Mode System

Selecting the Drive Mode

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch (1) to select a mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.



The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

INDIVIDUAL Mode

Customize each category to suit the driver's preference.

[Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings ▶P.155](#)

SPORT Mode

Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

GT Mode

Optimises the balance between operability and comfort.

COMFORT Mode



Enhances driver comfort.

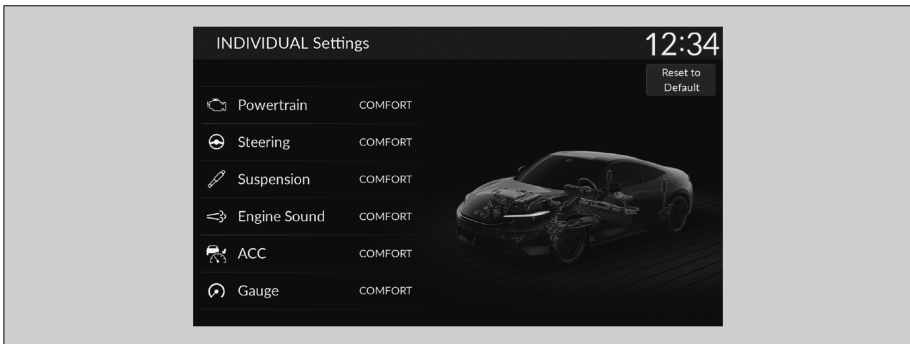
Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart. Each keyless remote has its own mode saved.

Last Mode	Next Mode
GT	GT
COMFORT	COMFORT
SPORT or INDIVIDUAL	GT
INDIVIDUAL	GT

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings

- [1] Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
- [2] Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize** to open the **INDIVIDUAL Settings**.
 - » You can also select from customized features on the audio/information screen.
 -  Selecting the Drive Mode ▶ P.154
 -  Customized Features ▶ P.226
- [3] Select the setting category.
- [4] Select the desired setting.



When you select **Reset to Default** on the **INDIVIDUAL Settings** screen, all **INDIVIDUAL** settings are reset to their factory defaults.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

You can use the paddles on the handle to change the rate of deceleration, from level 0 to level 6 or 7, when you release the accelerator pedal. When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

⚠ WARNING

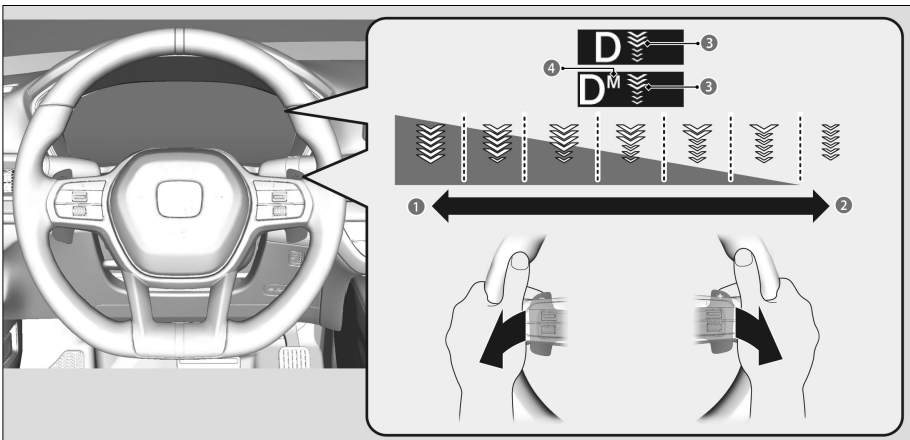
Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

How to Operate the Deceleration Paddle Selector

Each paddle operation changes the deceleration level by 1.

- » The deceleration rate only changes by one level even if you keep the paddle pulled back.
- » If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration level may not change.



- 1 Pull back on the paddle (left side)**
 - » Rate of deceleration increases.
- 2 Pull back on the paddle (right side)**
 - » Rate of deceleration decreases.

- 3 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator: Shows the rate of deceleration.
- 4 M display: Appears when the rate of deceleration is fixed.

Using the deceleration paddle selector

The deceleration rate display comes on when you pull back on the paddle while the transmission is in **D**.

The first time you pull back on the **-** paddle, the rate of deceleration is set to level 3.

The first time you pull back on the **+** paddle, the rate of deceleration is set to level 0.

When you decelerate to a full stop or press down on the accelerator, the deceleration rate selector is automatically cancelled, and the deceleration rate display goes off.

If you pull back on the **-** paddle while in stage 0, the rate of deceleration increases to stage 2.

Using the paddle selector with a fixed rate of deceleration

If you keep the paddle selector pulled back while the transmission is in **D**, the **M** display and deceleration rate display appear, and you can use the deceleration rate selector with a fixed setting.

Keep the **-** paddle pulled back to fix the rate of deceleration at level 3.

Keep the **+** paddle pulled back to fix the rate of deceleration at level 0.

If you keep the **+** paddle pulled back while at level 1 or lower, the rate of deceleration will be fixed at 0.

To unlock the fixed deceleration paddle selector, pull and hold back the **+** paddle.

When Honda S+ Shift is turned on, the deceleration rate set with the paddle will change.

 Honda S+ Shift ▶ P.158

Deceleration Paddle Selector Limitations

In the following situations, the display will blink and the rate of deceleration will not change even if you pull back on the paddle. Additionally, the rate of deceleration may decrease and this function may be cancelled.

- Hybrid power system protection is needed.
- The brake pad temperature is too hot.
- When the brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

Honda S+ Shift



Press the Honda S+ Shift switch (1) to shift through levels of vehicle speed. This feature simulates the sounds and sensations of driving a vehicle with a transmission system. When you press this switch, the gauge display changes to the tachometer. When you accelerate or decelerate, the simulated gear level (2) and an **S+** (3) are displayed on the gauge.

How Honda S+ Shift Works

You can press the Honda S+ Shift switch to turn the system on and off.

You can still change drive modes when the system is turned on.

While the system is turned off, you can press and hold the switch to change to

INDIVIDUAL mode.

 Drive Mode System ▶ P.154

The system is turned off when the power mode is set to OFF.

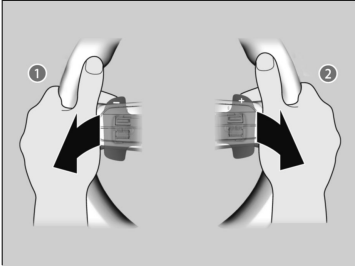
If you operate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow while the system is on, then the system will be turned off.

The system may not be able to be turned on under some driving conditions.

A message will be displayed if this happens.

- When decelerating or driving uphill, the system may shift down based on the High Voltage battery's state of charge.
- Vehicle speed and engine speed may not interact as needed for this system due to driving conditions or the temperature of vehicle systems.

Paddle shifter



1 Pull back on **-**

» Gear level decreases by 1.

2 Pull back on **+**

» Gear level increases by 1.

While the system is on, you can pull back on the **+** paddle to increase the gear level by 1, or pull back on the **-** paddle to decrease the gear level by 1.

When you operate the paddle, an arrow is displayed next to the gear number.

You can keep the **+** paddle pulled back to have the gear level change without needing to repeatedly pull on the paddle.

Even while operating the paddle, the gear level will shift according to the situation.

You can keep the **-** paddle pulled back to decrease gear levels based on speed.

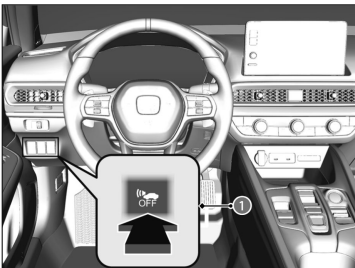
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

This system makes a sound to alert people that your vehicle is nearby when you are driving at a speed of about 20 km/h*¹/ 25 km/h*² or less.

*1: Malaysian and Philippine models

*2: Australian, New Zealand, Indonesian and Taiwanese models

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System On and Off*



Press the button (1) to turn the system on and off.

» The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.

*: Not available on all models

! The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

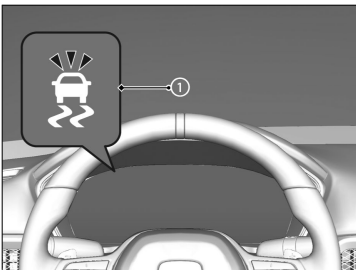
VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

- The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

! VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

! The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

VSA Operation

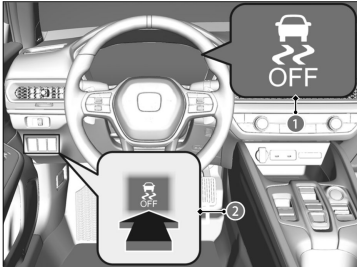


When VSA activates, the VSA system indicator **①** will also blink.


- » The engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator.
- » You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system.

- !** When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA On and Off



1 VSA OFF Indicator

To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold  (VSA **OFF**) button (2) until you hear a beep.

The traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the button until you hear a beep.

Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.

- !** In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again.

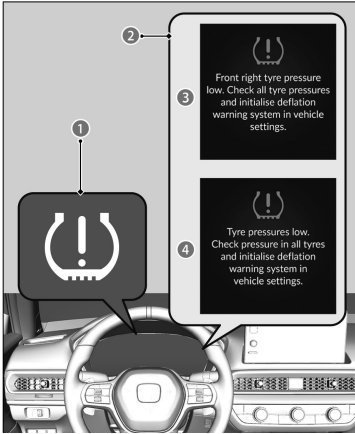
Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

- When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.
- You may hear an operating noise while the agile handling assist is activated.

- !** The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)*



Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator (1) to come on and a message (2) to appear.

3 Appears when any one tyre is significantly under-inflated. (e.g., a front right side tyre)

4 Appears when two or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.

- The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.
- Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.
- Tyres can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Tyres can become overinflated in warmer weather.
- The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The tyre loses air pressure rapidly.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at calibration.

System Calibration

You must start calibration every time you adjust the pressure in one or more tyres, rotate the tyres, or replace one or more tyres.

*: Not available on all models



When you calibrate the system, do the following:

Customized Features ▶ P.226

- [1] Press the (Home) button then select **Vehicle Settings**.
- [2] Select **TPMS Calibration**.
- [3] Select **Calibrate**.
 - » Calibration starts.
 - » If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat the procedure.
 - » The calibration process finishes automatically.

- Make sure the vehicle is at a complete stop and the shift position is in **P** when you calibrate the system.
- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres before calibrating the system.

Checking Tyres ▶ P.349

- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h. During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within a certain amount of time, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.



The system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre as specified.



If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Controls

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch	165
Map Light Switches	165

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box	167
Centre Console Box	167
Sun Visor	168
Accessory Power Socket	168
Wireless Charger	169
Coat Hooks	171
Luggage Hooks	172
Tie-down Anchorages	172
Sunglasses Holder	173
Beverage Holders	173

Seat Heaters*

Using the Front seat Heater	174
-----------------------------	-----

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System	176
Using Automatic Climate Control	182

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment	186
Audio System Basic Operation	186
USB Ports	188
Audio Remote Controls	189
Connecting a Device	190
About System Updates	193

Display Audio Basic Operations

Start Up	194
Reboot Audio	195
Home Screen	195
System Updates	196
Trip Computer	198
Clock	198

Adjusting the Sound	200
Changing the Display Settings	201
Playing FM Radio	201
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*	204
About Media Playback	205
Google built-in	210
User Information	211
Power Flow	214

Display Audio Other Operations

Wi-Fi Connection	216
Apple CarPlay	217
Android Auto™	219
Hands-Free Telephone System	220

Display Audio Customized Features

Customized Features	226
---------------------	-----

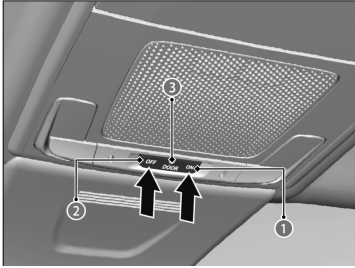
General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives	236
About Open Source Licences	240
Licence Information	240
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto	242

*: Not available on all models

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch



1 : ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

2 : OFF

The interior light remains off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

3 : Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened
 - When the driver's door is unlocked
 - When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF
- In the door activated position, the interior light turns off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it, the light turns off after about 30 seconds.
 - If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior light goes off after about 15 minutes.



You can change the interior lights dimming time.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230



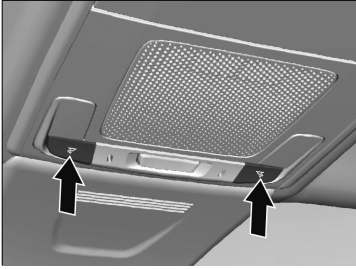
To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.


Map Light Switches


This light is used for situations such as viewing a map at night while your vehicle is stopped.

Press the switch to turn on the light, press it again to turn off the light.

Front seat

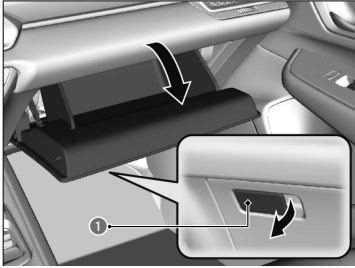


The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  button.

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the  button.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



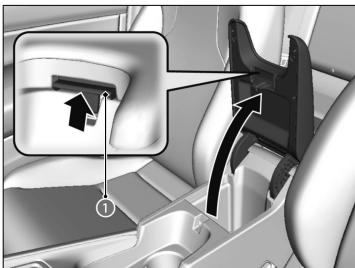
Pull the handle to open the glove box.

1 Handle

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt. Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

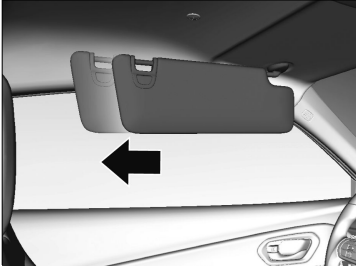
Centre Console Box



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

1 Handle

Sun Visor



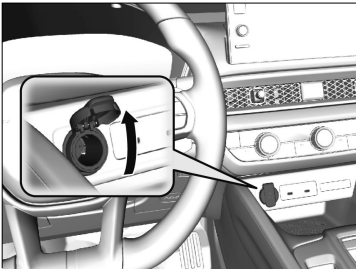
The sun visor can be extended horizontally.

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON. Open the cover to use it.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

Front console panel




- ❗ Do not insert an automotive-type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

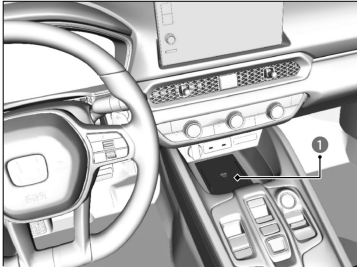
- ❗ To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

! When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

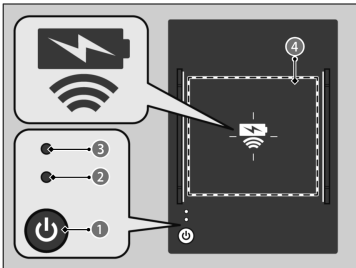
Wireless Charger


About Wireless Charger


To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:




1 Wireless Charger




- 1  (Power) Button
- 2 Green Indicator
- 3 Amber Indicator
- 4 Charging Area

- [1] To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
 - » When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
- [2] Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
 - » The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
 - » Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
- [3] When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
 - » Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

The unit is compliant with WPC Specification Version 1.2.

- The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.
-  appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.
- During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the hatch is closed to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.
- A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.



This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long period of time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

! When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.


! Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

! Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

Indicator flashing

Perform one of the following solutions:

When the Indicator (Green & Amber) Blink simultaneously

- » Remove the obstacle(s).
- » Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
- » Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.

When the Indicator (Amber) Blinks

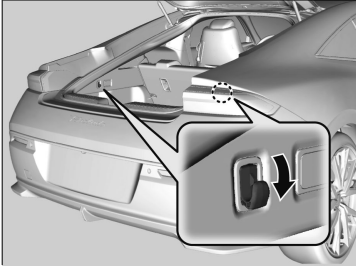
- » Contact a dealer for repairs.

Coat Hooks



The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

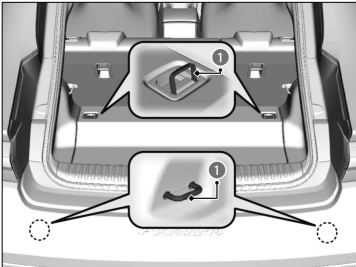
Luggage Hooks



The luggage hooks in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

! Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the luggage hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.

Tie-down Anchorages



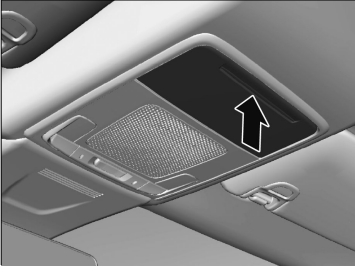
The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

1 Anchorage

⚠ CAUTION

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Sunglasses Holder



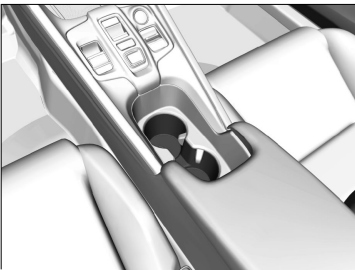
To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches. You can store sunglasses and other small items in this holder.

! Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

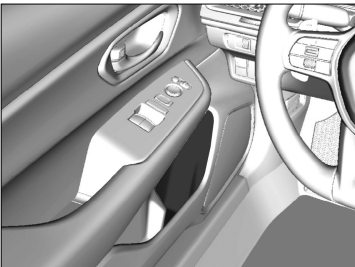
Beverage Holders

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Front seat beverage holders



Located in the console between the front seats.

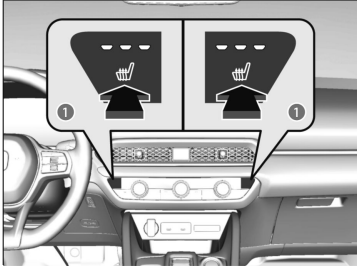


Located on both of the door side pockets.

Seat Heaters*

Using the Front seat Heater

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:

- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

1 Seat Heater Button

- When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.
- After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

Press the **AUTO** button:

- Both the air conditioner and seat temperature will automatically change to the setting most suitable to the ambient environment.
 - » When the seat heater button is pressed, settings will switch to manual mode.
- When activated in this way, the set temperature will fall as time passes, and eventually the seat heater will shut off.
- The seat heater may turn on if sensors detect weight on the passenger seat due to luggage, etc.



To prevent automatic activation, you can turn off automatic climate control for the front seat.

[How to Customize the Vehicle Settings](#) ▶ P.230

WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lowerlimb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

*: Not available on all models



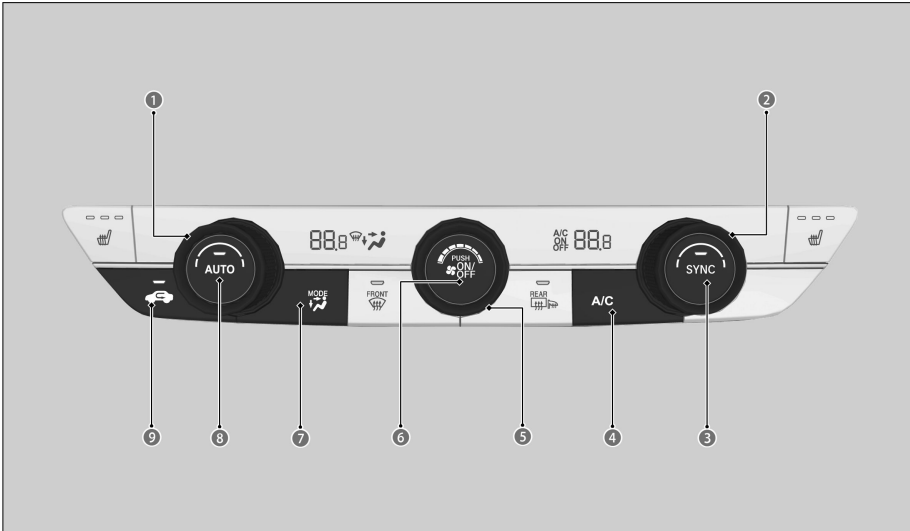
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System

Explanations of switches

▼ Taiwanese models



1 Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the driver's side interior temperature.

2 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the passenger's side interior temperature.

3 SYNC (Synchronization) Button

4 A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Turns cooling/dehumidification function ON/OFF.





5 Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.

6 (ON/OFF) Button


Turns the climate control system ON/OFF.

7 MODE Control Button

-  Dashboard vents
-  Dashboard and floor vents
-  Floor vents
-  Floor and defroster vents

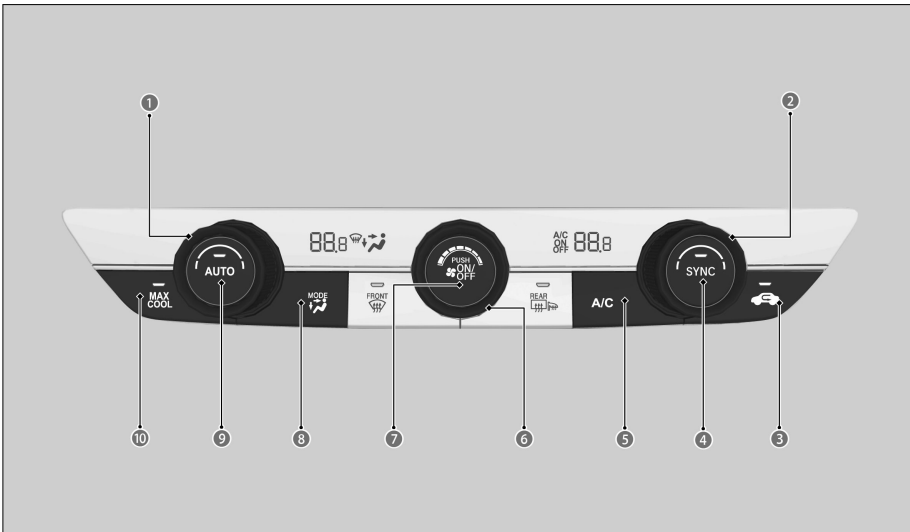
8 AUTO Button

Switch to automatic control.

9  (Recirculation) Button

Switch Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.


- Recirculation (indicator light on):
Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
- Fresh air (indicator light off):
Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

▼ Philippine models**1 Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial**

Adjusts the driver's side interior temperature.

2 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the passenger's side interior temperature.

3  (Recirculation) Button

Switch Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.

- Recirculation (indicator light on):
Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
- Fresh air (indicator light off):
Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

4 SYNC (Synchronization) Button

5 A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Turns cooling/dehumidification function ON/OFF.





6 Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.

7  (ON/OFF) Button

Turns the climate control system ON/OFF.

8 MODE Control Button

-  Dashboard vents
-  Dashboard and floor vents
-  Floor vents
-  Floor and defroster vents

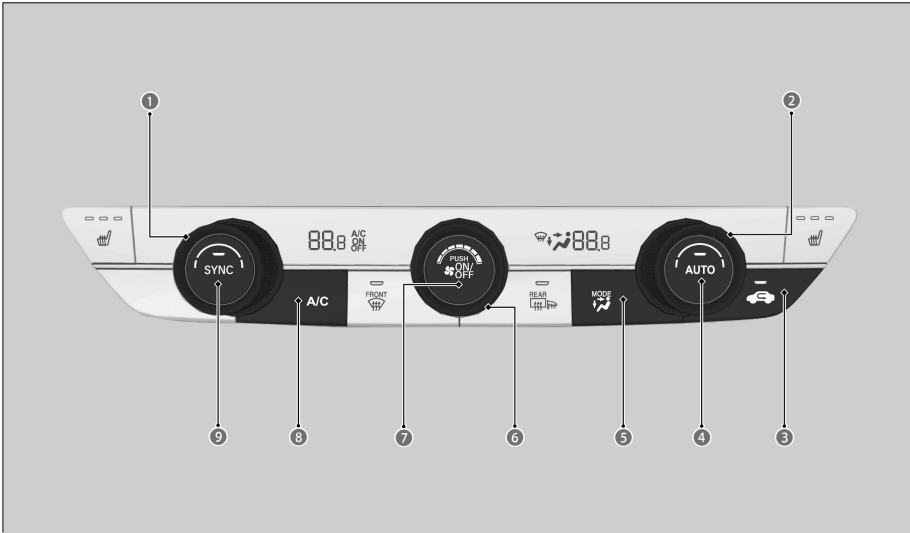
9 AUTO Button

Switch to automatic control.

10  (MAX COOL) Button

Cool down the interior temperature rapidly.

▼ Australian and New Zealand models




1 Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the passenger's side interior temperature.

2 Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the driver's side interior temperature.

3  (Recirculation) Button





Switch Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.

- Recirculation (indicator light on):
Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
- Fresh air (indicator light off):
Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

4 AUTO Button

Switch to automatic control.

5 MODE Control Button

-  Dashboard vents
-  Dashboard and floor vents
-  Floor vents
-  Floor and defroster vents

6 Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.

7  **(ON/OFF) Button**

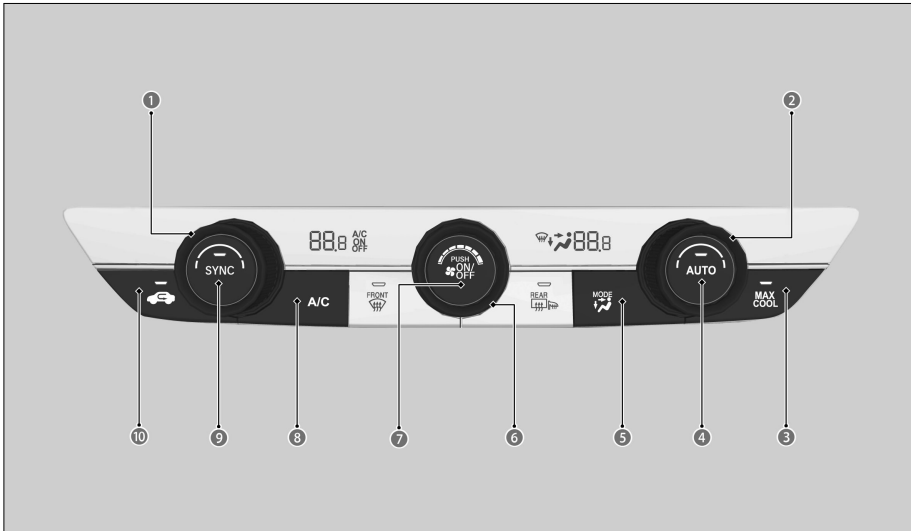
Turns the climate control system ON/OFF.

8 **A/C (Air Conditioning) Button**

Turns cooling/dehumidification function ON/OFF.

9 **SYNC (Synchronization) Button**

▼ Indonesian and Malaysian models



1 **Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial**

Adjusts the passenger's side interior temperature.

2 **Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial**

Adjusts the driver's side interior temperature.





3  **(MAX COOL) Button**

Cool down the interior temperature rapidly.

4 **AUTO Button**

Switch to automatic control.

5 **MODE Control Button**

-  Dashboard vents
-  Dashboard and floor vents
-  Floor vents
-  Floor and defroster vents

6 Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.


7  (ON/OFF) Button

Turns the climate control system ON/OFF.

8 A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Turns cooling/dehumidification function ON/OFF.

9 SYNC (Synchronization) Button

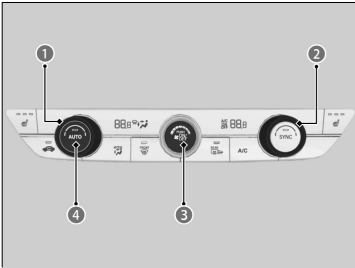
10  (Recirculation) Button

Switch Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.

- Recirculation (indicator light on):
Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
- Fresh air (indicator light off):
Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Using Automatic Climate Control

▼ Left-hand Drive Type



❶ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

❷ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

❸  (ON/OFF) Button

❹ AUTO Button

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

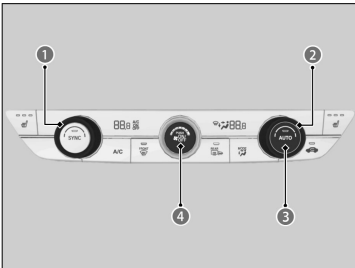
Use the system when the engine is running.

[1] Press the **AUTO** button.

[2] Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.

[3] Press the  (**ON/OFF**) button to cancel.

▼ Right-hand Drive Type



❶ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

❸ AUTO Button

❹  (ON/OFF) Button

- If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.


The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the **AUTO** button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

- The climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.


- To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

 Using the Front seat Heater ▶P.174

▼ Models with **MAX COOL** button

 If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, press the **MAX COOL** button.

▼ Models without **MAX COOL** button

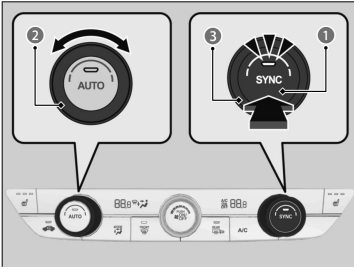
 If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Synchronization Mode

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

SYNC on and off

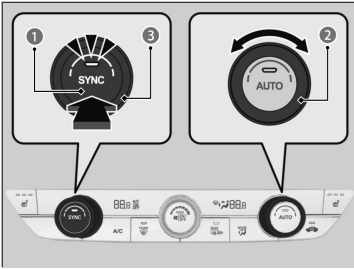
▼ Left-hand Drive Type



- [1] Press the **SYNC** button.
 - » The **SYNC** indicator will come on.
 - » The system switches to synchronization mode.
- [2] Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

- ① **SYNC** Button
- ② Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- ③ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

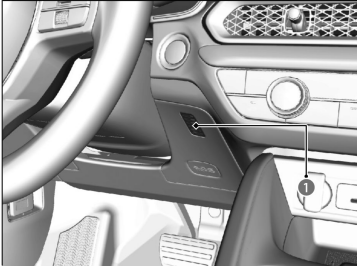
▼ Right-hand Drive Type



- ① **SYNC** Button
- ② Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
- ③ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

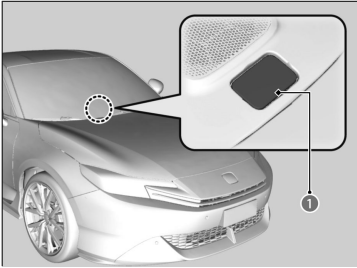
- Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.
- When you press the **FRONT OFF** button, the system changes to synchronization mode.
- When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

1 Sensor



1 Sensor

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment

The audio system features FM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service*. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, smartphones, and *Bluetooth*® devices. You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knob on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

» To use this system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

▼ Taiwanese models

Use of this feature is limited while driving. When using video playback, make sure that your vehicle is stopped with the parking brake applied. According to the “Operational guidelines concerning recommended warning displays for 3C devices” from the Ministry of Health and Welfare’s National Health Bureau, it is possible that blue light emitted from the screens of 3C devices may cause dry eye, cataracts, retinopathy, optic neuropathy, or other types of eye damage.


The ministry of health and welfare recommends the following precautions when using 3C devices:

- 1) Take a 10 minute break after every 30 minutes of use;
- 2) Children under the age of 2 should not look at screens, and children age 2 and older should not look at screens for more than 1 hour per day.

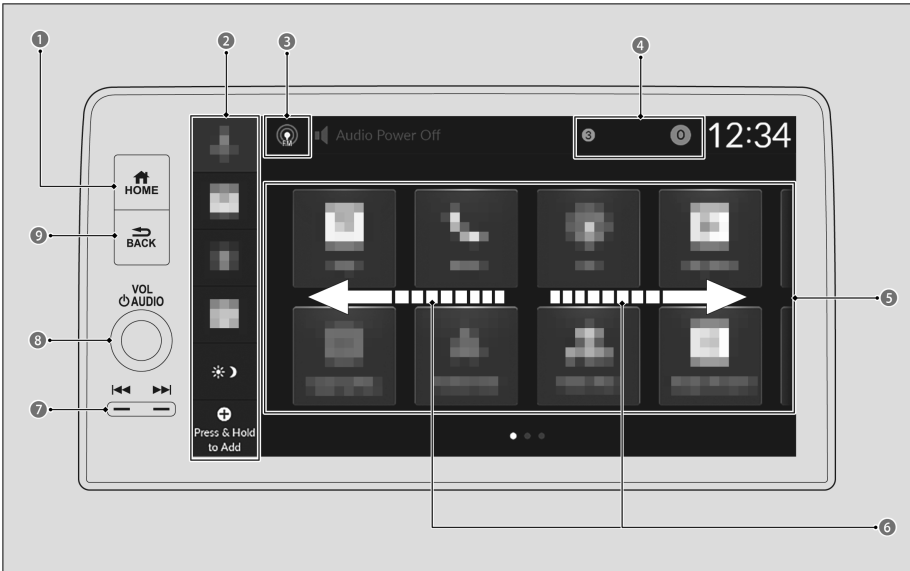
Audio System Basic Operation

Audio System Basic Operation with Display Audio

Swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Press the  (Home) button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

*: Not available on all models



- 1 (Home) Button
- 2 Mode Change Switch Bar
- 3 Audio Source Icon
- 4 Status Bar
- 5 App Icons
- 6 Swipe
- 7 (Seek/Skip) Button
- 8 **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
- 9 (Back) Button

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures – including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction. You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.



You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

[How to Customize the General Settings](#) ▶ P.226

Selecting an audio source

Select audio source icon in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

System status

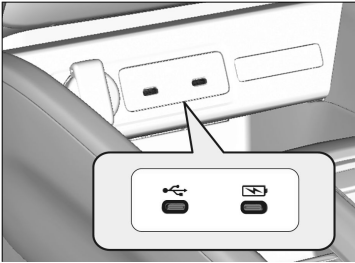
Displays information about your vehicle, connected devices, etc. You can select the status bar to view more details in the status area.

Mode change switch bar

You can also select any application from the mode change switch bar. Shortcuts can be edited to open other applications; however, **Google Assistant** cannot be edited.

USB Ports

On the front panel



USB charging/connector port ()

The USB port is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.

- » To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

USB charging port ()

The USB port is only for charging devices.

- » You cannot play audio files even if an audio device is connected.

- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Messages displayed on the Audio System may vary depending on the device model and software version.
- Some devices may not work even if they are connected to the USB ports.

Supplementary information about USB Charging:

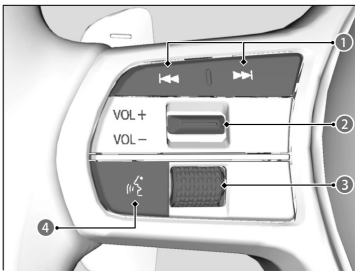
- The USB port supports USB Power Delivery.
- USB standard output
When using 1 port: 5V/3A (15W), 9V/3A (27W), 15V/3A (45W), 20V/3A (60W)
When using both ports: 5V/3A (15W), 9V/3A (27W), 15V/3A (45W), Max 60W in total
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
- The USB port also supports PPS (Programmable Power Supply). PPS 5.0V-21V (Max 60W).
- Charging may not start or may operate slowly depending on the connected devices and cables. Using only one port while not connecting anything (including cables) to the other port may solve the issue.

! Do not leave the device or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.

! Do not connect the device or USB flash drive using a hub, as they will not operate if you do.

! Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.

Audio Remote Controls









Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

- 1 (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- 2 (Volume) Switch
- 3 Left Selector Wheel
- 4 (Talk) Button

! Depending on the device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Seek/Skip Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press :** To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press :** To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold :** To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold :** To select the previous strong station.

- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - » Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
- **Press**  : To skip to the next song.
- **Press**  : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 - **Press and hold**  : To skip to the next folder.
 - **Press and hold**  : To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to a wired connection or *Bluetooth*® Audio
 - **Press and hold**  : To fast forward a song.
 - **Press and hold**  : To rewind a song.

VOL /VOL (Volume) Switch

Press Up: To increase the volume.

Press Down: To decrease the volume.


Left Selector Wheel

To switch between audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Connecting a Device

With a connected device you can play various files, as well as use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

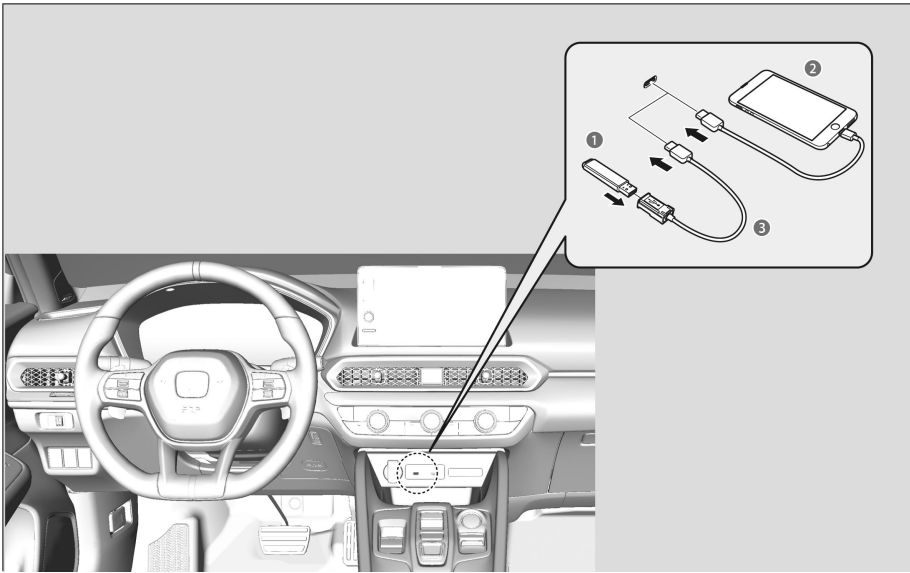
» Depending on the app used, device battery may decrease even with a wired connection.

 Always make sure your vehicle is parked in a safe location before connecting a device.

About Wired Connections

Connect a device to the USB charging/connector port ().

» You may need to operate the device.





- 1 USB Flash Drive
- 2 Device
- 3 USB Cable

About Wireless Connections

You can modify *Bluetooth*® function settings.

Once you have paired a device, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more of the following icons indicating available features:

 : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio and HFT.

 : The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.


 : The phone is compatible with Android Auto.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.


Bluetooth® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select **Options**.

- [6] Select **Bluetooth**.
- [7] Select **On**.








To pair a new device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
 - » If your phone has already been paired to the system, the device name appears on the list.

 To change the currently paired device  P.192


- [5] Select **Connect New Device**.
- [6] Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Search for Devices**.
 - » HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
- [7] Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - » If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for Vehicle Name.
 - » Confirm if the pairing code on the audio/information screen and your phone matches. This may vary by phone.
- [8] On your phone, give pairing permission.

To change the currently paired device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select the , , or  icon.
 - » When the  or  icon is selected, the  icon cannot be selected.
 - » You can set the connected phone priority. Check the box on the phone you want to prioritize.

- To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the *Bluetooth*® screen.

To delete a paired device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select a phone you want to delete.

[6] Select **Delete Device**.

» A confirmation message appears on the screen.

[7] Select **Delete**.

About System Updates

When a software update is available for your vehicle, a notification will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

Instructions for performing updates via the audio/information screen are included in this manual.

For details on other methods of performing an update, please refer to the Honda Connect App manual*, or ask a dealer.

System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.

Instructions

🔍 System Updates ▶ P.196

*: Not available on all models

Display Audio Basic Operations

Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the disclaimer screen will be displayed. When adding a new user, entry of user information is required at start-up.


Select **OK** on the disclaimer screen.

- » If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched to the home screen, or the top screen of the last executed application, after a certain period of time.
- » If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed after selecting **OK** or after a certain period of time.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191

Registering New User Information

- [1] Read the disclaimer screen and select **OK**.
- [2] Select **Set up profile**.
 - » If you want to change the language, select **Change Language**.
- [3] Name your profile and select **Next**.
- [4] You can view the terms and conditions of the Google Services agreement.
- [5] On the System-wide permission Settings screen, select the data you give permission for the system to access, and select **Accept**.
- [6] Select **Done for now**.
 - » By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.
 - » By selecting **Set up Google Assistant and apps**, you can customize settings related to Google. An internet connection is required to change settings.

 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.216

Refer to the Google website for more information on setting up a profile.




Additional information for Google apps and services is available at Honda website.

- Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

Reboot Audio

You can reboot the audio system.

- [1] Press and hold the  (Home) button until the reboot dialog screen appears.
- [2] Select **Reboot**.
 - » If **Safe Mode** is selected, the audio system will be rebooted with third-party applications turned off. After the power mode has been turned off once, third-party applications can be used again.


Home Screen

App icons can be added, deleted, or moved on the home screen.

- You cannot delete the **All Apps** icon.
- Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.
- Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.




To Add/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

App icons can be added or removed on the home screen.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **All Apps**.
- [3] Select the apps you want to add or remove and check/uncheck the box.

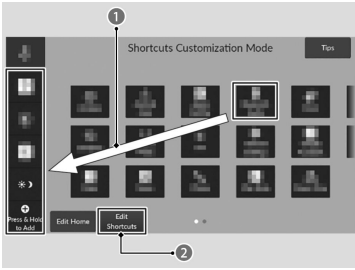
To Move/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.




- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select and hold an app icon.
- [3] Drag and drop the app icon to where you want it to be.
 - » Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the **Hide** icon.
- [4] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.
 - » The screen will return to the home screen.

To Store Shortcut Icons on the Home Screen

You can store up to five icons on the mode change switch bar.



- 1 Drag and drop
- 2 Edit Shortcuts

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select and hold an app icon.
- [3] Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
- [4] Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the left of the home screen.
 - » You can also store app icons in the mode change switch bar by selecting icon → shortcut location.
- [5] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.
 - » The screen will return to the home screen.


System Updates


System Updates uses the telematics control unit (TCU) or Wi-Fi communication capability to operate.


When an update for your system becomes available, a screen prompting you to update your system will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

- If new software has been released, perform an update as soon as possible.
- If a system update fails, please consult a dealer.
- System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual. For the most up-to-date information, please refer to the Honda website.
- Certain features may not be available during system updates.


Performing System Updates

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **System Updates**.
- [3] Select **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** to give permission for the update.
 - » The installation progress screen displays.
 - » While the power mode is set to OFF, an update started notification displays for a few seconds.
- [4] The next time the power mode is turned to ON, the system update results screen will be displayed.
 - » System update results can also be viewed from **System Updates → Settings → Update History**.


 Make sure your vehicle is stopped in a safe location before starting a system update.

 If you have pressed **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** on the agreement screen when an update is being offered, or **Automatic Update** is set to **Enable**, and the update started notification is not displayed even though the power mode is set to OFF, it may be due to one or more of the conditions listed below. For more information, consult a dealer.

- The shift position is not in **P**.
- The vehicle is providing one or more emergency notifications.
- The 12-volt battery is depleted.


 If the system is being updated via Wi-Fi, you will not be able to use this feature in some situations based on Wi-Fi authentication methods.

- The connection requires you to log in.
- Agreement to terms of use is required.

 If you are disconnected from the network, the download will be stopped. Download is resumed when a new network connection is established.

System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **System Updates**.
- [3] Select **Settings**.
- [4] Select the option you want to change or confirm.

The following settings items can be set.

- **Automatic Update**
- **Automatic Download**
- **Control Unit Versions**

- **Connection Setup**

🔍 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.216

- **Update History**



To perform a system update via Wi-Fi, change settings for connecting to Wi-Fi.

🔍 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.216

Trip Computer

Displays the trip computer information.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Trip Computer**.


- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A/Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.
To reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **Delete Trip History**.
To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **“Trip A” Reset Timing** or **“Trip B” Reset Timing**.

Clock

Adjusting the Clock


You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen when the power mode is in ON.

» The Guest user cannot adjust the clock.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **System**.
- [4] Select **Date & Time**.
- [5] Select **Set Date & Time**.
- [6] Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **Off**.

To adjust date:


- [7] Select **Set Date**.
- [8] Select  or .

[9] Press the  (Back) button to set the date.

To adjust time:

[7] Select **Set Time**.

[8] Select  or .

[9] Press the  (Back) button to set the time.

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.



You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 [How to Customize the General Settings](#) ▶ P.226



You can customize the date display.

 [How to Customize the General Settings](#) ▶ P.226

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

» The maximum image size is 4,096 × 2,304 pixels and the data size is less than 10 MB.

Import wallpaper

[1] Connect the USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port.

 [USB Ports](#) ▶ P.188

[2] Select **Clock**.

[3] Select **Menu**.

[4] Select **Clock Faces**.

[5] Select **Add More**.

[6] Import a desired picture.

» Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.

[7] Select **Select Files**.

[8] Select **Add Files**.

Select wallpaper

[1] Select **Clock**.

[2] Select **Menu**.


[3] Select **Clock Faces**.

[4] Select a desired wallpaper.


[5] Select **Save**.

Delete wallpaper

- [1] Select **Clock**.
- [2] Select **Menu**.
- [3] Select **Clock Faces**.
- [4] Select **Delete Files**.
- [5] Select **Select Files to Delete**.
 - » If you want to delete all wallpapers, select **Delete All Files**.
- [6] Select a desired wallpaper.
- [7] Select **Select Files**.
- [8] Select **Delete Files**.

 Do not turn off your vehicle or remove the USB memory immediately after changing or importing wallpaper. A saving error may occur, and USB data may be corrupted.

Adjusting the Sound

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select an audio source icon.

▼ FM Radio mode

- [3] Select **Menu**.
- [4] Select **Sound Settings**.
- [5] Select the setting you want.


▼ DAB, USB Audio, *Bluetooth*® Audio mode

- [3] Select **Sound**.
- [4] Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Mid / Treble:** Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation:** Sets the amount of volume increase.


You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Mid / Treble** and **Balance / Fader**, select **Reset to Default** in each setting item.

Changing the Display Settings

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Display**.
- [4] Select the setting you want.
 - » To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**.

Playing FM Radio



- ① Sound Icon
- ② Station List
- ③ Scan Icon
- ④ Press & Hold to Add
- ⑤ Preset Icons
- ⑥ Tune Icon

7 Seek Icons

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
- [2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

- » When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

To find an RDS station from station list


- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- [2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for a few seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the  (Back) button.

Favourite Station

To switch the favourite station, select the preset icon.

- » Swipe the preset icon area to display the next preset icons.

*: Not available on all models

To add a station:

- [1] Tune to the selected station.
- [2] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
 - » You can store 12 stations into preset memory.

■ Editing a favourite station

Select and hold the desired favourite station icon.



The following items are available:

- **Remove Favorite/Remove Favourite:** Delete the favourite station icon from the favourite station list.
- **Replace with** (number): Replace the stored favourite station icon.
- **Add to Home:** Add the shortcut icon of the stored favourite station to the home screen.

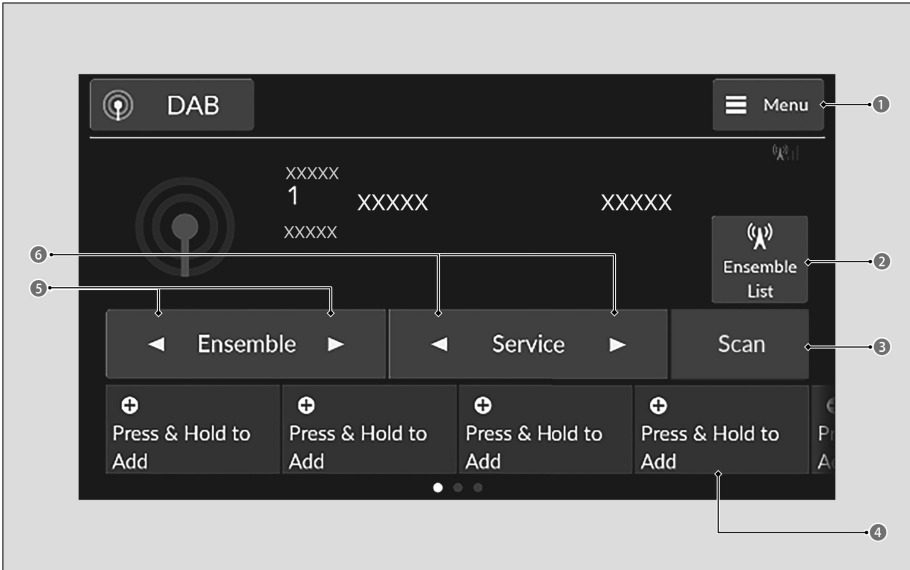
Tune

Select to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

Seek

Select  or  to search up and down on the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



- 1 Menu Icon
- 2 Ensemble List Icon
- 3 Scan Icon
- 4 Press & Hold to Add
- 5 Ensemble Icons
- 6 Service Icons

Preset Memory

To add a service:

- [1] Tune to the selected service.
- [2] Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
 - » Selecting **Press & Hold to Add** can set a new preset station.
 - » You can store 12 ensembles into preset memory.

Ensemble List

- [1] Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
- [2] Select the ensemble.

*: Not available on all models

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

- [1] Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Ensemble


- [1] Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.
- [2] Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

Service

Tunes the service component.


To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for a few seconds. To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the  button.

About Media Playback

By connecting a device to the audio system, you can play audio files.








 It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

- Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.
- Depending on the connected device, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

About Play Modes

Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

-  **Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.
-  **Shuffle all:** Plays all available songs available in random order.
-  **Shuffle in folder**^{*1}: Plays all songs in the current folder in random order.
-  **Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.
-  **Repeat track:** Repeats the current song.
-  **Repeat folder/group**^{*1}: Repeats all songs in the current folder/group.
-  **Repeat all:** Repeats all songs (in the current folder^{*2}).

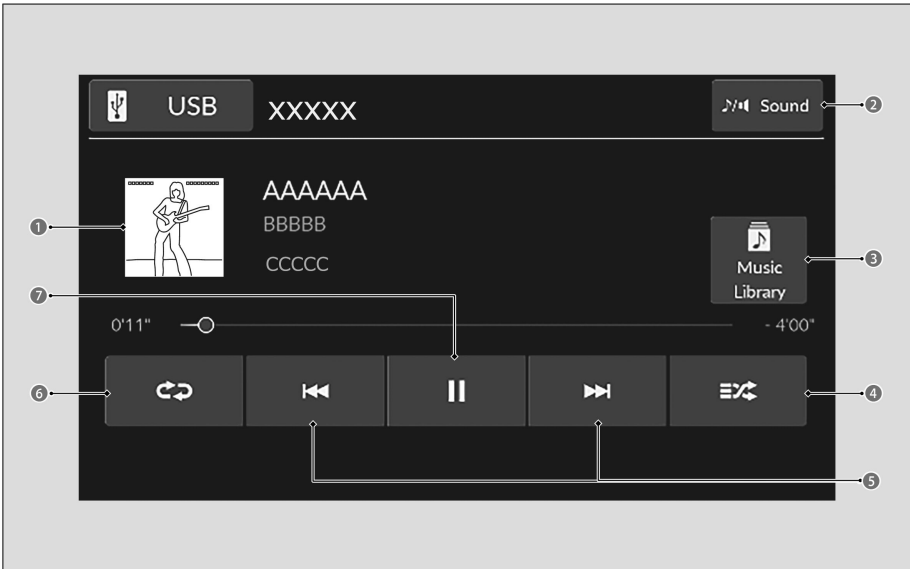
*1: When playing a song via USB device

*2: When playing a song using *Bluetooth*[®] Audio

Audio Playback via Wired Connection

Connect a device, such as an iPod or iPhone to the USB charging/connector port, and select the **USB** icon.

 About Wired Connections  P.190



- 1 Cover Art
- 2 Sound Icon
- 3 Music Library Icon
- 4 Shuffle Icon
- 5 Track Icons
- 6 Repeat Icon
- 7 Play/Pause Icon

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

Track icons

Select  or  to change songs.

Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list


[1] Select **Music Library**.

[2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).


[3] Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

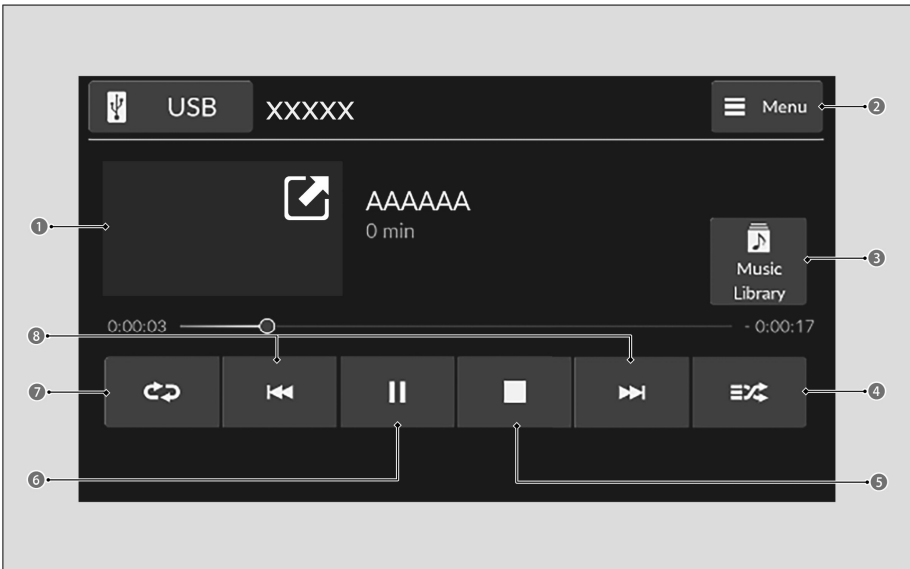
Media Playback via USB Device

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, and select the **USB** icon.

 [About Wired Connections](#) ▶ P.190

The audio system can read certain USB drive formats to play audio/video files.

 [Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives](#) ▶ P.236



① Cover Art^{*1}/Mini Player^{*2}

② Sound^{*1}/Menu^{*2} Icon

③ Music Library Icon

- 4 Shuffle Icon
- 5 Stop Icon*²
- 6 Play/Pause Icon
- 7 Repeat Icon
- 8 Track*¹/Video*² Icons

*1: When playing an audio file

*2: When playing a video file



WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

Track*¹/video*² icons

Select  or  to change files.

Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

*1: When playing an audio file

*2: When playing a video file

How to select a file/video from the music search list

- [1] Select **Music Library**.
- [2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
- [3] Continue making selections until you find the file of your choice.

Menu (When playing a video file)

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.


[1] Select **Menu**.


[2] Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Tone/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal*¹/Full/Zoom**)
- **Screen Size:** Changes the display screen size. (**Normal*¹/Wide/Full**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper Right*¹/Upper Left/Lower Right/Lower Left/Off**)

*1: Default Setting

Shrink/expand a video

 : Expand a video screen.

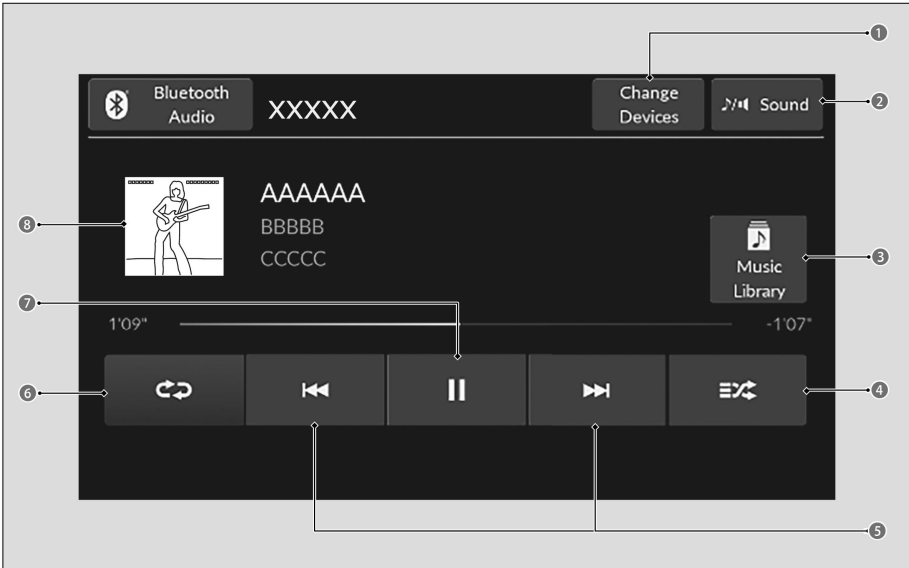
 : Shrink a video screen.

Audio Playback via *Bluetooth*® Device

Your audio system allows you to listen to audio files from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191




- 1 Change Devices
- 2 Sound Icon
- 3 Music Library Icon
- 4 Shuffle Icon
- 5 Track Icons
- 6 Repeat Icon
- 7 Play/Pause Icon
- 8 Cover Art

- Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

- Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191

- If more than one phone is paired to the HFT, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.
- If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable.
- To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Switching to another mode pauses the audio files playing from your phone.
- You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Devices**.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191

Track icons

Select  or  to change songs.

Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

- [1] Select **Music Library**.
- [2] Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
- [3] Select an item.

Google built-in

You can use the features available with Google built-in on the audio/information screen.

- Google, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.
- For more details on Google apps and services' features, visit the Google website.




Additional information for Google apps and services is available at Honda website.

Google Assistant

You can operate features with hands-free help from Google Assistant.

You can activate Google Assistant by:

- Saying "Hey Google."
 - » Wake words vary by region and language. Refer to the Google website for more information.
- Pressing the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
- Selecting the Google Assistant icon on the audio/information screen.

Below are examples of things you can ask Google Assistant:

- Play music.
- Play radio.



You can customize language and other settings regarding Google Assistant.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.226

Google Maps

Google Maps helps you reach your next destination faster with real-time traffic info, automatic rerouting, and voice control.

- Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.
- When your Google Account is linked with a valid user, destinations stored on other devices (home, work, favorites, previous searches, etc.) can be displayed. When the device and the vehicle are logged into the same Google Account, changing information on the device will change it on Google Maps as well.

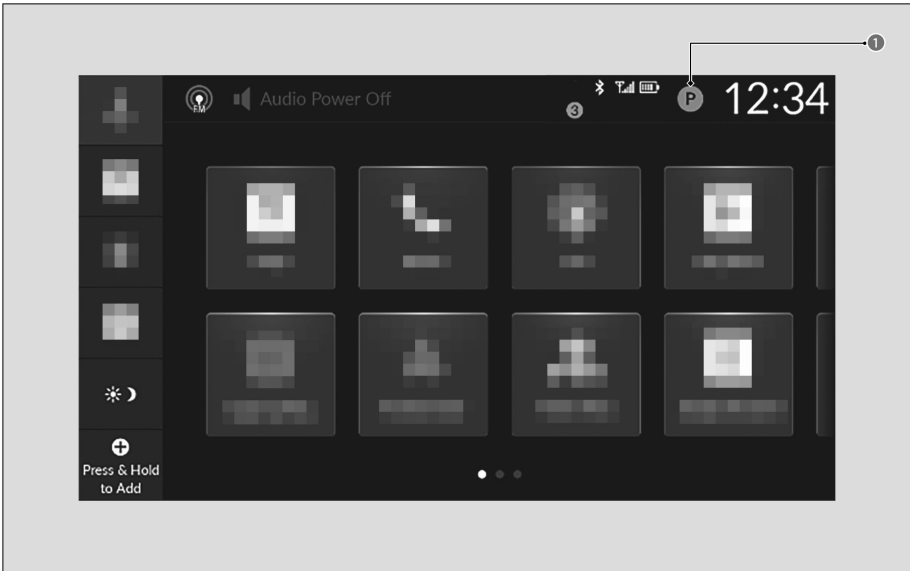
Google Play

Download your favorite apps on Google Play.

- The vehicle must be stopped in order to download an app.
- Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

User Information

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings. By registering a user, you can personalize your vehicle settings. You can select a user when the audio/information screen loads, even when the doors are open or unlocked.



1 User Information

By linking your profile with your Google Account, you can enjoy a more personalized experience with Google built-in. For more assistance on account linking, visit the Google website.



You can customize settings individually for each user.


[How to Customize the Profile Settings](#) ▶ P.234

- You can customize security settings for each user. If you have forgotten security settings, you will need to delete the user and create a new one. If you have forgotten security settings for the Owner user, please contact a dealer.
- Certain features are unavailable when using a newly created user or the Guest user.

Registering a User

[1] Select User Information.

» You can also add users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.

 [How to Customize the Profile Settings](#) ▶ P.234

» You can add users even when the doors are open and unlocked.

- [2] Select **Change Profile**.
- [3] Select **+Add User**.
- [4] Select **OK**.
- [5] Enter user information.

 [Start Up](#) ▶ P.194

- You can add up to four users other than the Owner user and the Guest user.
- When you add a user, the audio/information screen is loaded under that user.

Switching Users

- [1] Select User Information.

» You can also change users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.

 [How to Customize the Profile Settings](#) ▶ P.234

» You can switch users even when the doors are open and unlocked.

- [2] Select **Change Profile**.
- [3] Select the user you want to use.

- Users with customized security settings can restrict screen operations by selecting the **Screen Lock** shortcut.

Deleting Users

- [1] Select **Profile Settings**.
- [2] Select **Manage Profile**.
- [3] Select **Profiles & accounts**.
- [4] Select **Delete your profile**.

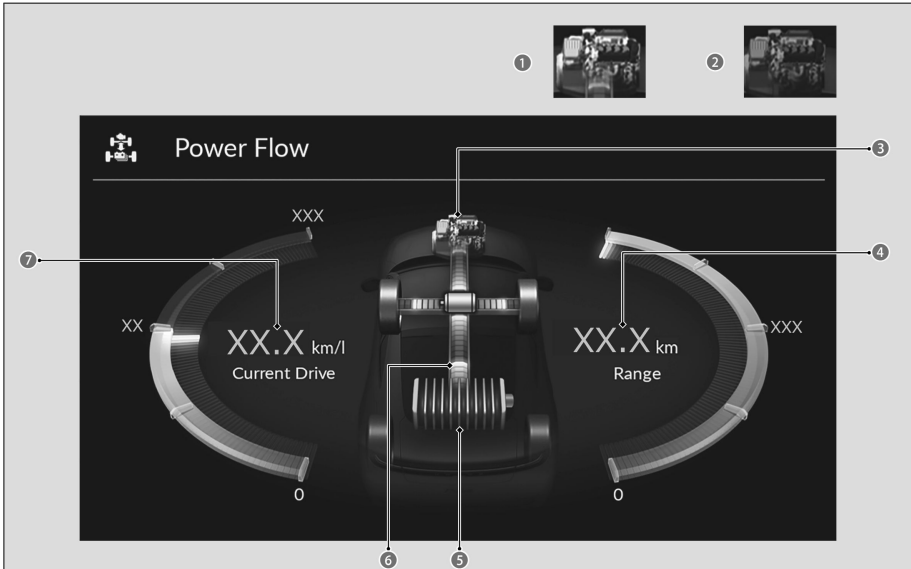
- When the profile currently being used is deleted, the audio/information screen is loaded under the Guest user.
- While using the Owner user, you can delete other users via **General Settings → Advanced Settings**.

 [How to Customize the General Settings](#) ▶ P.226


- Depending on the version of your OS, the steps for deleting a user may differ from the instructions on this page. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Power Flow

Displays the motor and engine power flow, average fuel economy, and range.



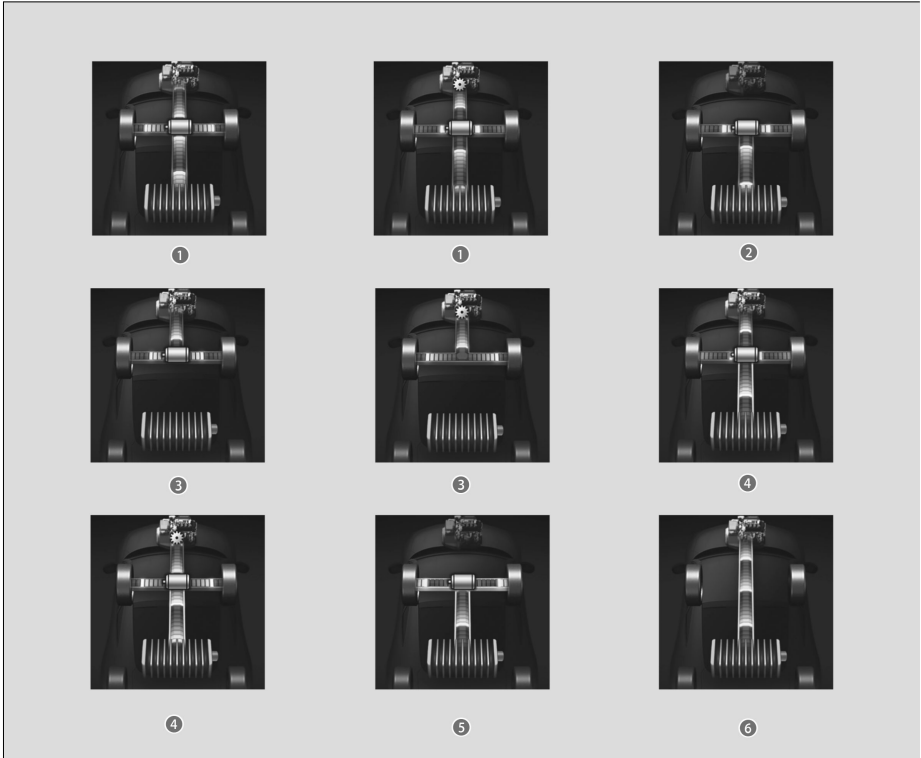
- 1 Engine ON
- 2 Engine OFF
- 3 Engine
- 4 Driving Range
- 5 High Voltage Battery Level Gauge
- 6 Power Flow
- 7 Average Fuel Economy (Current Drive)

- While the engine provides propulsion directly to the wheels, the  icon appears in the power flow monitor on the screen.
- The power flow monitor is also displayed on the driver information interface.

 Power Flow/Engine Status Display ▶ P.316

Displays the power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

- » The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.



- 1 Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and the engine-driven generator. (Blue)
- 2 Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery. (Blue)
- 3 Power is being supplied by the engine-driven generator. (Blue)
- 4 Power is being supplied directly by the engine and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator. (Blue and Green)
- 5 The High Voltage battery is being charged through regenerative braking. (Green)
- 6 The High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator. (Green)

Display Audio Other Operations




Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.



Use Wi-Fi Inside the Vehicle

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
 - [2] Select **General Settings**.
 - [3] Select **Connections**.
 - [4] Select **Wi-Fi**.
 - » To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Options**.
 - [5] Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
 - [6] Select **Connect**.
 - » When the connection is successful, the status text **Connected** next to the network name is displayed on the list.
 - [7] Press the  (Home) button to go back to the home screen.
- You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.
 - Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.
 - Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.
 - You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
 - In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - When you select **Access Point**, you can set up a wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.226

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via USB charging/connector port or wirelessly, and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can operate Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

🔍 Connecting a Device ▶ P.190

- We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.
- Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.
- You can use the method below to change Apple CarPlay settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Press the  (Home) button → Select **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select device.

- While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone. You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with Hands-Free Telephone, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone. Other previously paired phones can also use *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.
- When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.

🔍 Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri ▶ P.218

- For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.

• **Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.
- Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the collection of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) from your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your iPhone, an error code will be displayed.


🔍 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.226

Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website. Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone. Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.


Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port.

 About Wired Connections ▶ P.190

If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Apple CarPlay**.
- [3] Select **Check Device List** or **Connect New Phone**.
- [4] Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191

- [5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

 Audio Remote Controls ▶ P.189

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:



- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto™

If you connect an Android™ phone to the system via USB charging/connector port or wirelessly, and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can operate Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

🔍 Connecting a Device ▶ P.190

- We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth®* A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.
- Google, Android, Google Play, Android Auto and other marks are trademarks of Google LLC. Compatible Android phone and compatible active data plan required.
<https://partnermarketinghub.withgoogle.com/brands/android-auto/messaging/consumer-messaging/#disclaimers>
- Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.
- You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the  (Home) button → Select **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select device.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.
- To use each of Android Auto's features, say "Hey Google" while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

🔍 Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant ▶ P.220

- For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.
- **Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.
- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your smartphone, an error code will be displayed.

🔍 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.226

Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website.

Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone. Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.


Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable

Connect the Android phone to the USB charging/connector port.

 About Wired Connections ▶ P.190

If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.


Connecting Android Auto Wirelessly

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Android Auto**.
- [3] Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Devices**.
- [4] Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.191

- [5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice. Press and release to activate the standard voice recognition system.

 Audio Remote Controls ▶ P.189

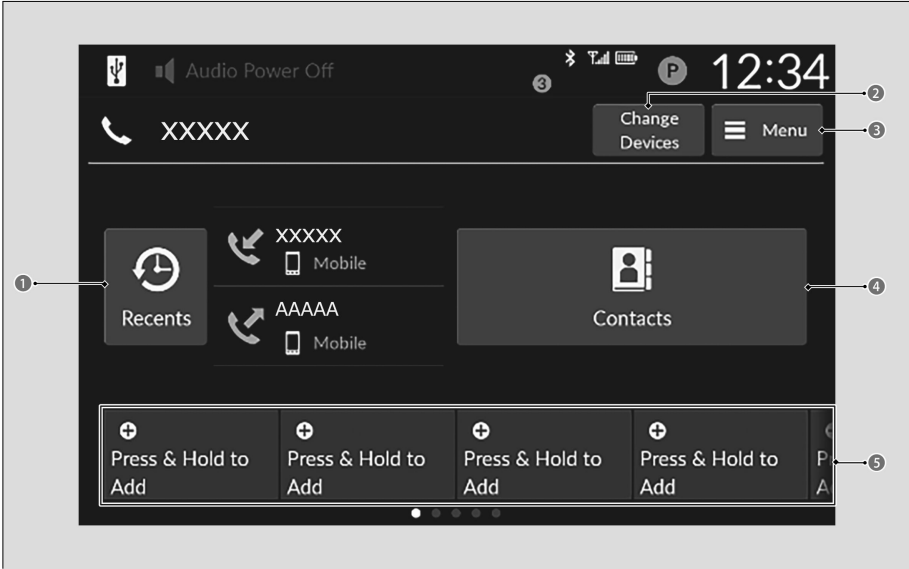
Below are examples of things you can ask Google Assistant:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your mobile phone. Select the **Phone** icon when your phone is connected to the system wirelessly.



- 1 Recents
- 2 Change Devices
- 3 Menu
- 4 Contacts
- 5 Favourite Contacts

- To use the system, the *Bluetooth*® setting must be **On**.

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth*® SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

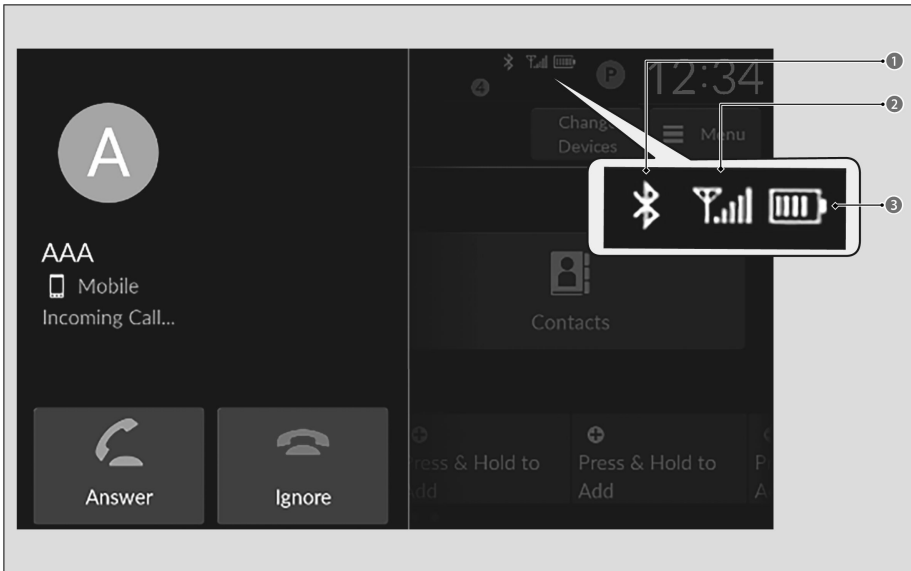
- **HFT Limitations**

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

- When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.
- On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.
- Depending on the connected mobile phone, some features may not be available.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



1 Bluetooth® Indicator

Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.


2 Signal Strength

3 Battery Level Status

- The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Favourite Contacts

To add a favourite contact

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
- [4] Select **From Recents**, **From Contacts**, or **Using Enter Number**.

▼ From Recents, From Contacts




- [5] Select a phone number.

▼ Using Enter Number


- [5] Input number, and select **Enter**.

To edit a favourite contact

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.

- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold a favourite contact.
- [4] Select **Edit Favourites/Edit Favorite**.
- [5] Select a setting you want.
- [6] Select **Enter** or .
 - » To delete a favourite contact, select **Remove Favourite/Remove Favorite**.
- [7] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.


Add a favourite contact to homepage

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold a favourite contact.
- [4] Select **Add to Home**.


Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select **Contacts**.
- [4] Select a name.
 - » You can sort by **First Name** or **Last Name**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- [5] Select a number.
 - » Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select **Menu**.
- [4] Select **Keypad**.
- [5] Select a number.
- [6] Select **Call**.
 - » Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All, Dialed/Dialled, Missed,** and **Received.**

[1] Press the  (Home) button.

[2] Select **Phone.**

[3] Select **Recents.**

» You can sort by **All, Dialed/Dialled, Missed,** or **Received** when you select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

[4] Select a number or contact name.

» Dialing starts automatically.

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

■ To make a call using a favourite contact entry

[1] Press the  (Home) button.

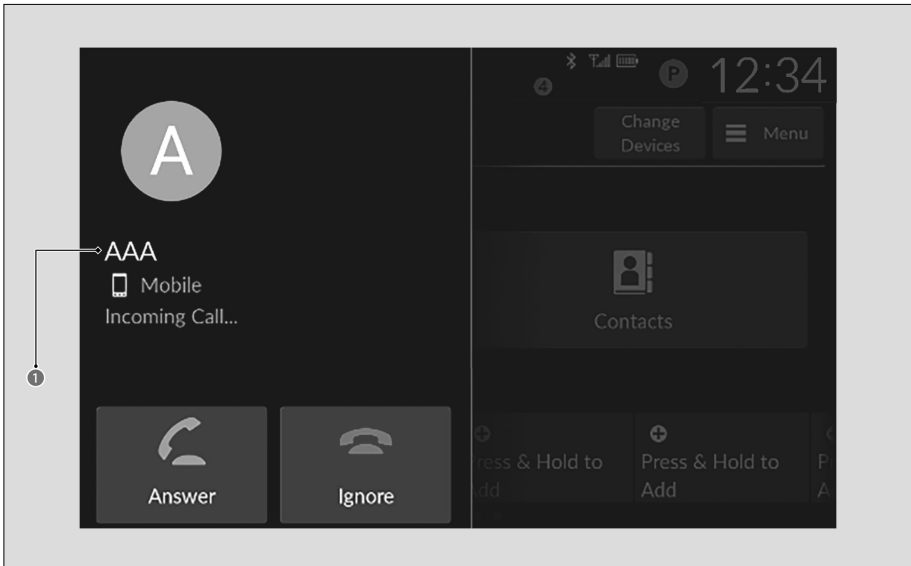
[2] Select **Phone.**

[3] Select a favourite contact.

» Dialing starts automatically.


Receiving a Call


When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.



1 Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)


To answer the call:

Select the  (**Answer**) icon.





You can also answer the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select  (**Answer**) on the driver information interface.

To decline or end the call:

Select the  (**Ignore**) icon.

You can also ignore the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select  (**Ignore**) on the driver information interface.

Call Waiting:

- Select the  (**Answer**) icon to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
- Select  using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
- Select the  (**Ignore**) icon to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
- Select  if you want to hang up the current call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

- **Hang Up:** End the call. Calls can also be ended from the driver information interface by using the left selector wheel roll up or down.
- **Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

 Making a Call ▶ P.223

- **Mute:** Mute your voice.
- **Transfer to Mobile:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Phone Menu Screen

By selecting **Menu** and selecting a settings item, you can change the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system settings.

The following settings items can be set.

- **Keypad:** Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Latest Call History:** Set whether the history shortcut is displayed in the phone screen.
- **Auto Sync Phone:** Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.
- **Auto Phone Call Transfer:** Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.
- **Ringtone:** Select a fixed ringtone or the one from the connected mobile phone.

Display Audio Customized Features

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

! When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the  (Home) button, select **General Settings**, and select a setting item.

List of Customizable Options

System


Date & Time → Set Date & Time

Automatic Date & Time

On/Off


Set Date

Adjusts date.

 Adjusting the Clock ▶ P.198

Set Time

Adjusts clock.

 Adjusting the Clock ▶ P.198

Date & Time → Time Zone*

Automatic Time Zone

On/Off

(Select time zone)

Changes the time zone manually.

Date & Time → Date Format

Day-of-week, MM DD, YYYY/
YYYY.MM.DD Day-of-week/
YYYY.MM.DD (Day-of-week)/Day-of-
week DD.MM.YYYY/DD.MM.YYYY

Date & Time → Time Format

12H/24H

Language

English (US English)^{*1}/English (EU
English)^{*1}/Chinese^{*1}

Touch Panel Sensitivity

Low/High

*: Not available on all models

About → IP Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Wi-Fi MAC Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Bluetooth MAC Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Serial Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Up Time

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Model Number

Displays the Android setting items.

Connections**Manage Device Connections →
Options****Bluetooth**

On/Off

Priority Device Information

Displays the priority device.

Change Name

Changes vehicle name for *Bluetooth*® connection setting.

Smartphone Projection Screen Size

Normal/Wide

Smartphone Projection Error Code

Displays the error code(s) of the smartphone projection.

About → Android Version

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Kernel Version

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Build Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Software Version

Displays the Android setting items.

Factory Data Reset

Cancel/Continue

*1: The default setting varies depending on the model.

**Manage Device Connections → +
Connect New Device**

Pairs a new phone to HFT.

🔍 About Wireless Connections
▶ P.191

**Manage Device Connections
→ (Saved Devices)**

Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.

🔍 About Wireless Connections
▶ P.191

Wi-Fi → Options**Wi-Fi**

Off/On

Add Network

Allows you to connect to a new external network.

Saved Networks

Deletes a saved network or changes update permission settings for the selected network.

Access Point → Options

Access Point

Off/On

Privacy

Microphone

Turns the microphone on and off. eCall can still be used regardless of settings.

Location

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Infotainment system data

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

App permissions

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

System-wide Permission Settings

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Edit Access Point Settings

Allows you to confirm hotspot settings and edit hotspot connection information.

Data Connection Options → Set Up Wi-Fi

Sets personal hotspot (phone tethering).

 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.216

Data sharing with Google*¹

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Ads

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Google legal*¹ → Google Terms of Service*¹

Displays the Google URL.

Google legal*¹ → Google Privacy Policy*¹

Displays the Google URL.

*1: Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Display

Brightness

Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.

Contrast

Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.

Black Level

Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.

Day Mode^{*1}

Changes between the daytime mode and night mode.

Night Mode^{*1}

Changes between the daytime mode and night mode.

Display Off

Turns the audio/information screen brightness off.

^{*1}: When the AID sensor is disabled.

Sound

Bass / Mid / Treble → Treble

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶ P.200


Bass / Mid / Treble → Midrange

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶ P.200

Bass / Mid / Treble → Bass

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶ P.200


Balance / Fader

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶ P.200

Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation

Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶ P.200

Sound Volume

System Sounds

Adjusts the sound volume.

Voice Recognition

Adjusts the sound volume.

Navigation Guidance

Adjusts the sound volume.

Camera

Rear Wide Camera → Guidelines

Fixed Guideline

On/Off

Dynamic Guideline

On/Off

Voice Control

Default Assist App

None/Google Assistant

Listen for “Hey Siri”^{*1}

On/Off

Security

You can customize security settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Google

You can customize Google settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Advanced Settings

You can customize advanced system settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the  (Home) button → **Vehicle Settings** → setting item.

Phone Calls

Adjusts the sound volume.

Cross Traffic Monitor

On/Off

Google Assistant

Sets the functions of **Google Assistant**.

^{*1}: Activates when the iPhone is connected.

List of Customizable Options

TPMS Calibration*

TPMS Calibration

Calibrate

Driver Assist System Setup

Forward Collision Warning Distance/Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance

▼ Left-hand drive type

Long/Normal^{*1}/Short

▼ Right-hand drive type

Far/Normal^{*1}/Near

ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep/ACC vehicle ahead detected beep

On/Off^{*1}

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Normal^{*1}/Early/Off

Road Departure Mitigation Setting

▼ Philippine and Taiwanese models

Narrow/Normal^{*1}/Wide/Warning Only

▼ Indonesian and Malaysian models

Early/Normal^{*1}/Delayed/Warning only

▼ Australian and New Zealand models

Early/Normal/Delayed^{*1}

Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep/Lane keep assist beep

On/Off^{*1}

Blind Spot Information

Audible And Visual Alert^{*1}/Visual Alert

Traffic sign recognition system display*

ON^{*1}/OFF

Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning^{**}

ON^{*1}/OFF

Driver Attention Monitor

Tactile And Audible Alert^{*1}/Tactile Alert/Off

Rear Sensor Setting

On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

*: Not available on all models

Meter Setup

Adjust Outside Temp. Display

-3°C ~ ±0°C^{*1} ~ +3°C

“Trip A” Reset Timing

▼ Left-hand drive type

When Fully Refueled/IGN Off/
Manually Reset^{*1}

▼ Right-hand drive type

When Fully Refueled/When ignition is
turned OFF/Manual reset^{*1}

“Trip B” Reset Timing

▼ Left-hand drive type

When Fully Refueled/IGN Off/
Manually Reset^{*1}

▼ Right-hand drive type

When Fully Refueled/When ignition is
turned OFF/Manual reset^{*1}

Keyless Access Setup

Keyless Access Light Flash

On^{*1}/Off

Keyless Access Beep Volume

High^{*1}/Low

Keyless Access Beep

On^{*1}/Off

Adjust Alarm Volume/Alarm volume control

▼ Left-hand drive type

High/Mid^{*1}/Low

▼ Right-hand drive type

Max/Mid^{*1}/Min

Reverse Alert Tone/Reverse Position Alert Tone

On^{*1}/Off

Turn by Turn Auto Display/Turn by turn display

On^{*1}/Off

Rear Seat Reminder

On^{*1}/Off

Fuel Economy Unit*

l/100km/km/l^{*1}

*1: Default Setting

Remote Start System On/Off*

On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

*: Not available on all models

Lighting Setup

Auto High-Beam*

On^{*1}/Off

Adaptive Driving Beam*

On^{*1}/Off

Interior Light Dimming Time/ Interior light dimmer duration

60sec/30sec^{*1}/15sec

Door Setup

Auto Door Lock*

With Vehicle Speed^{*1}/Shift From P/
Off

Auto Door Unlock*

Shift To P^{*1}/IGN Off/Off

Walk Away Auto Lock/Walk away lock

On/Off^{*1}

The outer handle pop-out Setting

On^{*1}/Off

Keyless Lock Answer Back/Keyless lock notification

On^{*1}/Off

Climate Control Setup*

Driver Seat automatic Climate Control

On^{*1}/Off

Headlight Auto Off Timer

60sec/30sec/15sec^{*1}/0sec

Auto Headlight On with Wiper On/ Headlight integration with wipers

On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

Keyless Remote Power Window Control

On^{*1}/Off

Auto Folding Door Mirror

On^{*1}/Off

Lock Presetting

On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

Passenger Seat automatic Climate Control

On^{*1}/Off

*1: Default Setting

*: Not available on all models

INDIVIDUAL Settings

Powertrain

COMFORT/GT^{*1}/SPORT

Suspension

COMFORT/GT^{*1}/SPORT

Steering

COMFORT/GT^{*1}/SPORT

Engine Sound

COMFORT/GT^{*1}/SPORT

ACC

COMFORT/GT^{*1}

Gauge

COMFORT/GT^{*1}/SPORT

*1: Default Setting

Maintenance Info.*

Maintenance Info.

Select Reset Items

How to Customize the Profile Settings

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.

Press the  (Home) button, select **Profile Settings**, and select a setting item you want.

Change Profile

You can change and add users.

 User Information ▶ P.211

Manage Profile

Use **Manage Profile** to change profile settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.

Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings to their factory defaults.

- If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

*: Not available on all models





When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

Defaulting General Settings


Only the Owner user can execute this command.

If current profile is not the Owner user, please switch users.

 Switching Users ▶ P.213

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **System**.
- [4] Select **Factory Data Reset**.
 - » A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- [5] Select **Continue**.
- [6] Select **Reset** again to reset the settings.
 - » The system will reboot.

Defaulting Vehicle Settings

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Vehicle Settings**.
- [3] Select **Default All**.
- [4] Select **Yes**.

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

The following information was made based on the most up-to-date information at the time this manual was written. There may be some discrepancies with updated versions of the audio system.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XR/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone SE (3rd generation)/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

Compatible USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV formats may be unsupported.
- Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.
- Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive				
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v				
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3				
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-4 SP	MPEG-2
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive
File extension (AVI version)	.avi
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

MKV File

Media	USB Flash Drive					
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv					
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3					
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-2	VP8	VP9
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—

3GPP File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
File extension (3GPP version)	.3gp		
Compatible audio codec	MPEG-4, AAC LC (Low Complexity)		
Compatible video codec	H.263	H.264	MPEG-4 SP
Profile (3GPP version)	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Bit rate	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Maximum image	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—

WebM File


Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (WebM version)	.webm	
Compatible audio codec	Opus	
Compatible video codec	VP8	VP9
Profile (WebM version)	—	—
Bit rate	—	—
Maximum image	—	—

MPEG2-TS File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (MPEG2-TS version)	.ts	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG-2	H.264 AVC
Profile (MPEG2-TS version)	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Advanced Settings**.
- [4] Select **System**.
- [5] Select **Legal Information**.
- [6] Select **Third-party licenses**.

Licence Information

Bluetooth®

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

<https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/>



Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.

SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENCE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Safety Driving Assist System

Honda SENSING

About Honda SENSING..... 246

Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge

Content 247

Front Wide View Camera..... 249

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
..... 251

System Operation..... 251

Operating Conditions..... 253

System On and Off..... 254

System Limitations..... 254

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System..... 259

System Operation..... 259

Operating Conditions..... 261

System On and Off..... 261

System Limitations..... 262

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low
Speed Follow 265

How to Activate the System..... 266

System Limitations..... 272

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)..... 275

Operating Conditions..... 276

How to Activate The System..... 276

System Limitations..... 277

Traffic Jam Assist*

About Traffic Jam Assist..... 279

Operating Conditions..... 280

How to Activate The System..... 281

System Limitations..... 282

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

About Lead Car Departure Notification System.....
..... 284

Operating Conditions..... 284

System Limitations..... 284

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

About Traffic Sign Recognition System..... 287

System Operation..... 287

System Limitations..... 288

Blind Spot Information System

About Blind Spot Information System..... 291

System Operation..... 292

System On and Off..... 292

System Limitations..... 292

Cross Traffic Monitor

About Cross Traffic Monitor..... 294

System Operation..... 294

About Screen Display..... 295

System On and Off..... 295

System Limitations..... 295

Parking Sensor System

About Parking Sensor System..... 297

The Sensor Location and Range..... 297

System On and Off..... 297

Screen Operation..... 298

Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected
..... 298

System Limitations..... 300

*: Not available on all models

Honda SENSING

About Honda SENSING

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.

Honda SENSING has the following functions:

🔍 About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ▶P.251

🔍 About Road Departure Mitigation System ▶P.259

🔍 About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ▶P.265

🔍 About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.275

🔍 About Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.279

🔍 About Lead Car Departure Notification System ▶P.284

🔍 About Traffic Sign Recognition System ▶P.287

🔍 About Blind Spot Information System ▶P.291

🔍 About Cross Traffic Monitor ▶P.294

🔍 About Parking Sensor System ▶P.297

🔍 Auto High-Beam* ▶P.140

🔍 Adaptive Driving Beam* ▶P.142

🔍 Driver Attention Monitor ▶P.322

- Features that use the front wide view camera will operate about 15 seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

WARNING

Only use Honda SENSING as a driving assistance system.

Honda SENSING is not an autonomous driving system. This is only a system to assist the driver. There are limits to the recognition and control capabilities of each of its functions.

Overreliance on the system may lead to accidents such as collisions, which may result in death or serious injury. Always check your surroundings and drive safely by maintaining a sufficient following distance.

! If you set the power mode to ON while the vehicle is moving, such as when on a turntable in a parking lot, some functions may not work.

! To ensure proper operation of the system, observe the following:

- All the tyres are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn.
- Do not modify the suspension.

Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content

Operating Device



1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow. Or, press to cancel the system.

2 LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*. Or, press to cancel these systems.

3 **RES/+ / SET/-** Switch

Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.

Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

*: Not available on all models

4  **Interval Button**

Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

5 **CANCEL Button**

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Gauge Content

You can see the current state of each function.



1 **Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.**

- Green, White/Green: The system is on.
» White/Green indicates that a vehicle is not detected ahead.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

2 **Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.**

- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

3 **Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.**

- Green Lines: The system is operating.
- White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber Line: Lane departure is detected.

4 **Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.**

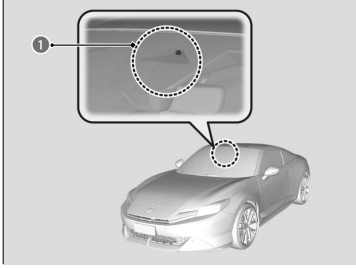
- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green.
- Outside of control target vehicle: Grey.

5 **Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.**

*: Not available on all models

6 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Front Wide View Camera



The camera (1) is mounted at the top of the windshield.

Handling of the Camera

- Avoid high interior temperatures to prevent the camera's sensing system from shutting off.
 - » It is recommended to find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking.
- To avoid concentrating heat on the camera, do not cover the camera when using a reflective sun shade.
- Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not scratch, nick, or cause any other damage to the windshield.
 - » Damage within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield.
 - » After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
 - » Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel.
 - » It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.
- Do not remove the camera, as it may cause the system to not work properly.
- Use the demister as needed to prevent fogging of the windshield.
- Do not install anything on the bonnet or front grille that obstructs the camera's view.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.

- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.**^{*1}/**Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.**^{*2} message appears:

*1: Except Philippines models

*2: Philippines models

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty.
- It may also appear in bad weather such as rain, fog, or snow, or when camera visibility is poor such as at night, in a tunnel, at dawn, or at dusk when the ambient conditions are dark.



If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)


About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a vehicle approaching from the side, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

 When performing vehicle maintenance or inspection using a chassis dynamometer or free roller, turn off the CMBS.

 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

System Operation

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you. CMBS operates when the system determines there is a possibility of a collision.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision.

» Depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

<Stage one> Situations where there is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you

The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing.

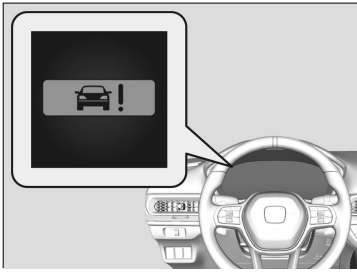
<Stage two> Situations where risk of a collision has increased and time to respond is reduced

Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are lightly applied.

<Stage three> Situations where it is difficult to avoid a collision

Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are forcefully applied.

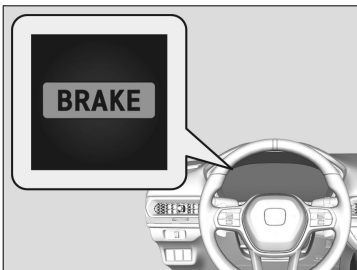
▼ Except Philippines models



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

» Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

▼ Philippines models



- When the CMBS applies the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.
- After CMBS is activated and your vehicle stops or decelerates, CMBS will be deactivated based on the system's judgment.

- The CMBS may be cancelled when you operate the steering wheel, brake, or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.
- When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.



You can change the distance (**Long**^{*1}/**Far**^{*2}/**Normal**/**Short**^{*1}/**Near**^{*2}) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on. When in **Long**^{*1}/**Far**^{*2}, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**^{*1}/**Near**^{*2}, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

Customized Features P.226

*1: Left-hand Drive Type

*2: Right-hand Drive Type

Operating Conditions

The conditions and targets of operation for CMBS are as follows:

■ When going straight

When your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or more, and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h or more:

- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you

When your vehicle speed is about 5-100 km/h, and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h or more:

- Stopped vehicle (including motorcycle)
- Oncoming vehicle
- Approaching vehicle from the side
- Pedestrian
- Moving bicycle

■ When turning left or right (only when there is a risk of a head-on collision)

When your vehicle speed is about 5-30 km/h, and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h or more:

- Oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles)^{*1}
- Pedestrian
- Moving bicycle

*1: Activates only when turning into the oncoming lane.

The system is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

 [System Limitations](#) ▶ P.254

Automatic Shut Off

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

 [Switching the Display](#) ▶ P.315

 [Safety Support](#) ▶ P.325

- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.
- You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

System Limitations

In the following situations, the system may be unable to correctly identify detectable targets or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.

- There is little contrast between detectable targets and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto a detectable target or roadway.
- Water is being splashed or snow is being flung by the preceding vehicle (including motorcycles).
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, detectable targets may not be illuminated).

Roadway conditions

- On snowy or wet roads with blurred lanes, tyre tracks, light reflections, water spray, high contrast, etc.
- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.

Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the system due to the condition of detectable targets

- The distance between your vehicle and the detectable target is too short.
- The detectable target suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the detectable target blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.

- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or when they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, three-wheeled vehicle, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the detectable target is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is too small and the distance between your vehicle and them is too short.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a detectable target approaching from the side is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a detectable target approaching from the side is too small and the distance between your vehicle and them is too short.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the detectable target while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left^{*1}/right^{*2} at an intersection etc.)^{*3}.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the system cannot correctly identify the shape of the detectable target.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle that is ahead of you or approaching from the side is extremely high.
- When turning left or right and your turn signal is not activated in the same direction you are turning.

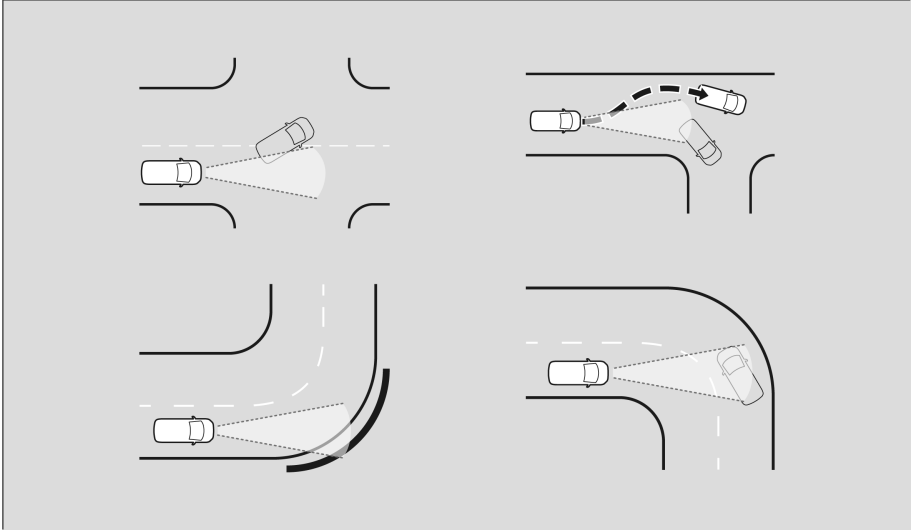
*1: Left-hand Drive Type

*2: Right-hand Drive Type

*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left^{*1/} right^{*2}, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

■ With little chance of a collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate in the following situations when the system determines that there is a possibility of collision.



- When your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead (including a motorcycle) that is turning left or right.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- When there are detectable targets or any structures around the curved road.
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.
- When your vehicle approaches a detectable target.
- When detectable targets are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When approaching a stationary vehicle (including motorcycles) or walls, such as when parking.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a detectable target that approaching from the side in front of you.

- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A detectable target enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you, or changes direction.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you, or changes direction.
- When your vehicle passes near a detectable target.
- Roadway objects or structures such as guard rails, poles, trees, parked vehicles, buildings, walls, etc., or road markings and road lines are misinterpreted as detectable targets.

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*¹, or a detected oncoming vehicle*¹.

🔍 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

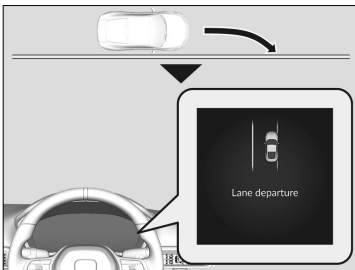
*1: Australian and New Zealand models

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

System Operation

▼ Australian and New Zealand models



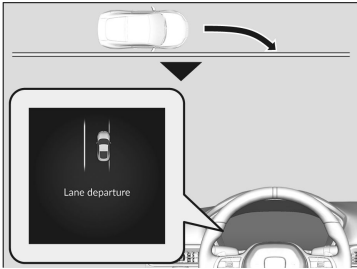
The front wide view camera monitors left and right lane markings in white (or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), or a detected oncoming vehicle. If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

» If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.

In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), or an oncoming vehicle.

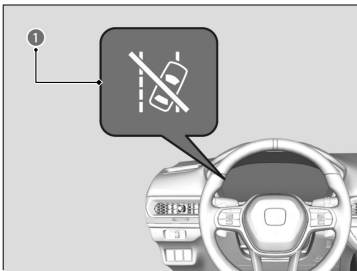
▼ **Except Australian and New Zealand models**



The front wide view camera monitors left and right lane markings in white (or yellow). If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane. The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

▼ **All models**



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator (1) comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

» After a few minutes, the indicator goes off and the system is fully restored.

- The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.
- There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.
- The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane, or driven in a narrow lane.



If Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) or Traffic Jam Assist* is off, the message may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)^{*1}, or oncoming vehicle^{*1}.

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

Operating Conditions

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system determines that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The lane markings are white (yellow) and your vehicle is travelling between 64 and 185 km/h.
 - » When oncoming vehicles are running: The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 185 km/h.^{*1}
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder and your vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 185 km/h.^{*1}

*1: Australian and New Zealand models



You can set the timing for Road Departure Mitigation System activation.

[Q Customized Features](#) ▶ P.226

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

[Q Switching the Display](#) ▶ P.315

[Q Safety Support](#) ▶ P.325

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.^{*1}
- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.^{*2}

*1: Except Australian and New Zealand models

*2: Australian and New Zealand models

*: Not available on all models

System Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder)*¹, or an oncoming vehicle*¹ under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.*¹

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.

- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles*1

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.
- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

■ With Little Chance of a Collision*1

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

*1: Australian and New Zealand models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash. Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

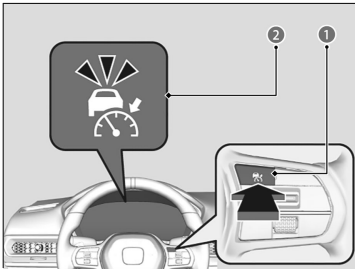
ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.



Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control. A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

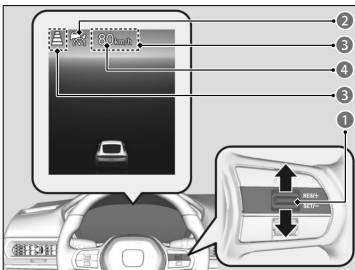
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- !** Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic
 - On roads with sharp turns
 - On roads with undulating slopes
 - On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes
 - On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access
 - On roads with slippery or icy surfaces


How to Activate the System




- [1] Press the  button (1) while the shift position is in **D**.
- » The  indicator (white) (2) comes on.

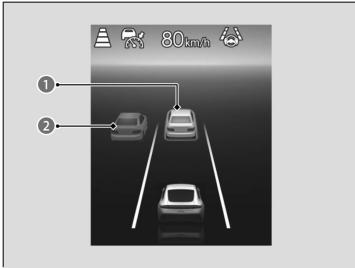


- [2] Press the **RES/+SET/-** switch (1) up or down.
- » The system will start operating at the set speed.
- » The icons and set speed will be displayed on the gauge.

- 2**  Indicator (Green, White/Green)
- 3** On when system operation begins
- 4** Set Vehicle Speed (White)

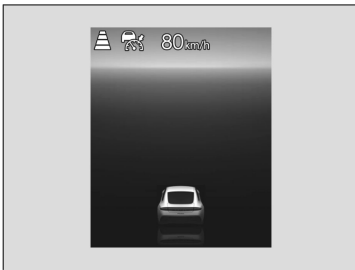
- ACC with Low Speed Follow does not operate while the brake pedal is depressed.
- When driving at 30 km/h or less, the vehicle speed is set to 30 km/h. If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

- When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.
- When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow, press the  button to turn off the system.

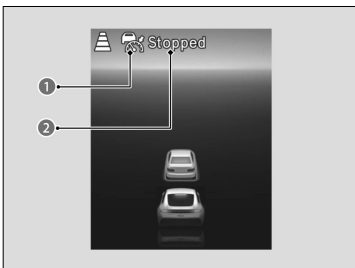


If a vehicle ahead enters the detectable range, icon (1) appears, and the system adjusts your vehicle's speed within the set range in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval.

- 1 Control target vehicle
- 2 Outside of control target vehicle



If there is no vehicle ahead, your vehicle maintains the set speed. If a vehicle ahead leaves due to actions such as changing lanes, the system will slowly accelerate to the set speed and then maintain it.

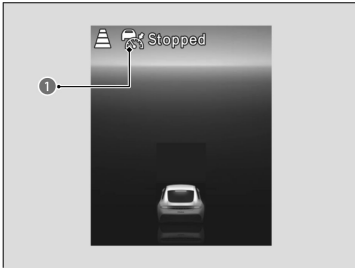


- 1  Indicator (Green)

Your vehicle also stops automatically. The message (2) appears on the gauge.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the previously set speed.

» When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the interval setting.

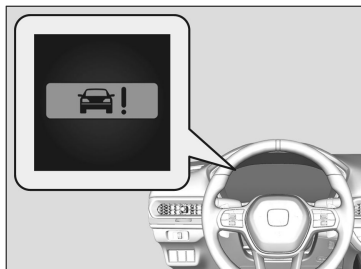


If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

1 Indicator (White/Green)

- When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.
- Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
 - » The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
 - » A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.
- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.
- When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.
- While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.
- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).
- While ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation, if the deceleration paddle selector is used or the Honda S+ Shift is turned ON, then ACC with Low Speed Follow will be cancelled.

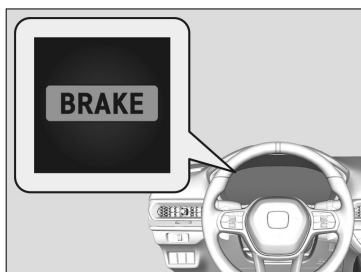
▼ **Except Philippines models**



If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision.

- » Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

▼ **Philippines models**



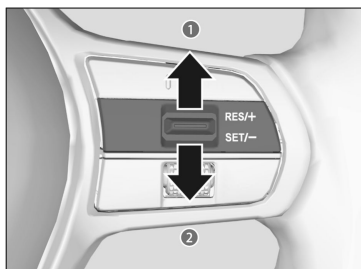
- You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.



You can set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the system detection range.

Customized Features ▶ P.226

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed



1 Pressing the RES/+SET/- switch up

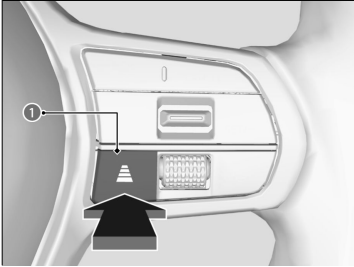
- » Each press increases speed by about 1 km/h.
- » Press and hold to increase speed by about 10 km/h.

2 Pressing the RES/+SET/- switch down

- » Each press decreases speed by about 1 km/h.
- » Press and hold to decrease speed by about 10 km/h.

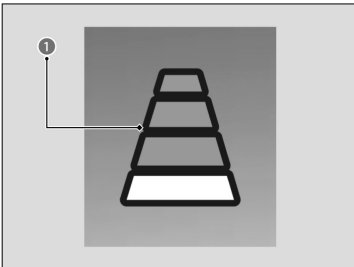
- If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+ / SET / -** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-Interval



Press the  button (1) to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

- » Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.
- » Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.
- » The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long, or extra long following-interval becomes.



The distance between vehicles is:

- About 27 m, 1.2 sec (vehicle speed is 80 km/h)
- About 33 m, 1.2 sec (vehicle speed is 100 km/h)

1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator



The distance between vehicles is:

- About 35 m, 1.6 sec (vehicle speed is 80 km/h)
- About 43 m, 1.6 sec (vehicle speed is 100 km/h)



The distance between vehicles is:

- About 44 m, 2.0 sec (vehicle speed is 80 km/h)
- About 55 m, 2.0 sec (vehicle speed is 100 km/h)

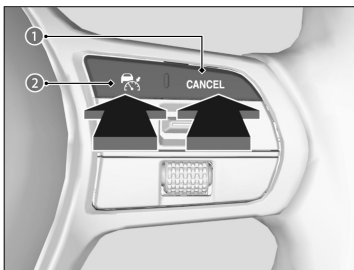


The distance between vehicles is:

- About 54 m, 2.4 sec (vehicle speed is 80 km/h)
- About 67 m, 2.4 sec (vehicle speed is 100 km/h)

! The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

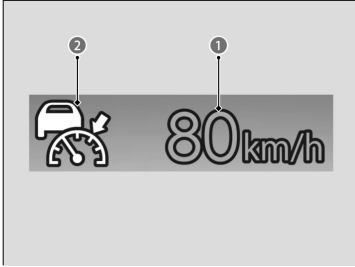
To Cancel



Any of the following operations will cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to be cancelled.

- Press the **CANCEL** button **(1)** or depress the brake pedal.
 - » The indicator changes green or white/green to white.
- Press the button **(2)**.
 - » indicator goes off.

Resuming the prior set speed



When you turn off ACC with Low Speed Follow by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed (1) is displayed on the gauge in grey.

You can activate ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up.

2 Indicator (White)

System Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.

- When the ABS, VSA, CMBS, or Post-Collision Braking System is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as a tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is also activated.
- The power system is turned off.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.

*: Not available on all models

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)


The system assists with both steering operation and maintaining lane-keeping by detecting the left and right white (or yellow) lines using the front wide view camera when the vehicle is driving near the centre of the lane.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

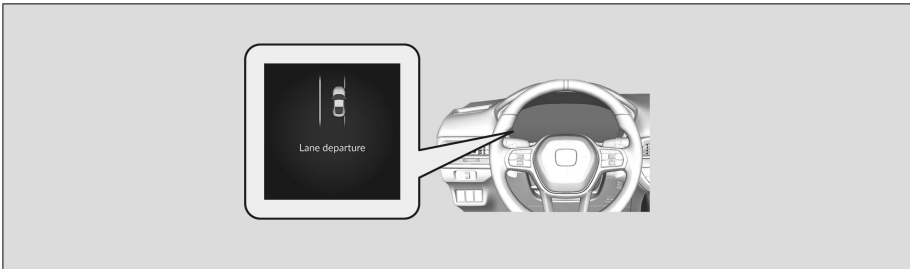
 If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, the steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

Lane Departure Warning Function

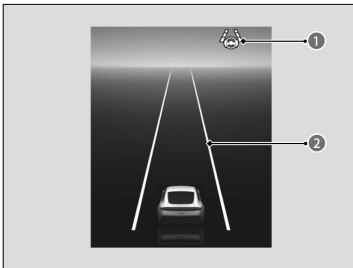
In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.






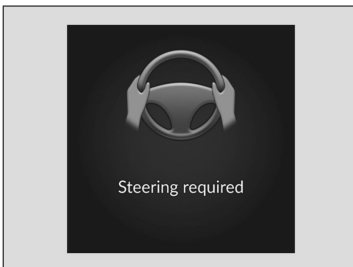
Operating Conditions

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

How to Activate The System



- [1] Press the  button.
 - »  indicator (white) (1) appears. The system is standby.
 - » If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines (2) appear on the gauge.
- [2] Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - » The  indicator and white lines change from white to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.




If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning display will appear. If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and LKAS will be cancelled.

To Cancel

Press the  button.

» To operate LKAS, press the  button again.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, the  indicator changes green to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.



You can change the LKAS suspended beep on and off.

 Customized Features ▶ P.226

System Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

Traffic Jam Assist*

About Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.



Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
 - » The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
 - » The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.



If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lane Keep Support Function

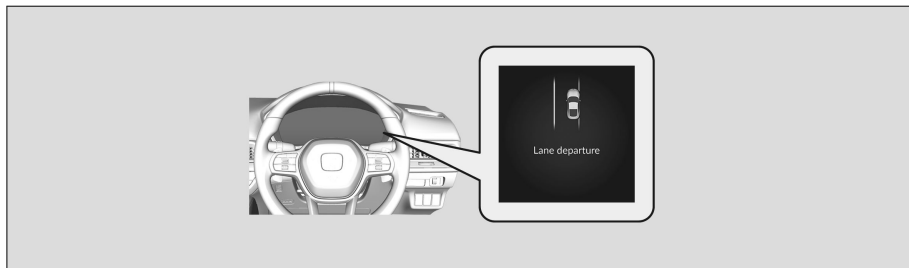
When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the traffic jam assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.

*: Not available on all models

- › When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
- › The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

Lane Departure Warning Function

In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



Operating Conditions

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in **D**.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.

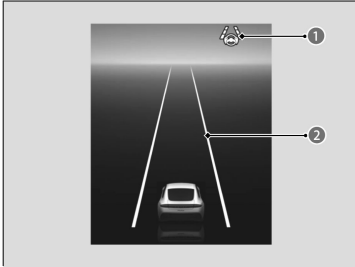
Refer to the following for proper handling of LKAS:

 About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶ P.275


Refer to the following for operating device and displays:

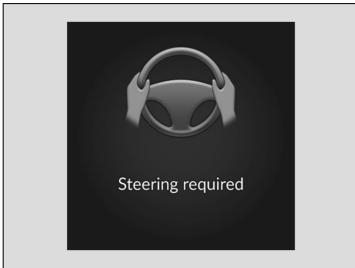
 Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content ▶ P.247

How to Activate The System




Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

» The  indicator (1) changes from white to green, and white lines (2) change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning display will appear. If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

To Cancel

Press the  button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

» To operate Traffic Jam Assist, press the  button again.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.
- The ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.



You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep**^{*1}/**Lane keep assist beep**^{*2} on the audio/information screen.

 Customized Features ▶ P.226

*1: Left-hand Drive Type

*2: Right-hand Drive Type

System Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.

- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

About Lead Car Departure Notification System

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



You can turn off the system or change the timing for system activation.

Customized Features ▶ P.226

WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance.

It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

Operating Conditions

When the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is within approximately 10 m and the vehicle ahead is stopped for any of the following reasons, you will be notified when the vehicle ahead starts moving.

- When the brake pedal is depressed.
- The automatic brake hold system is in operation
- When the shift position is in **N** and parking brake is in operation.

System Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

*: Not available on all models

■ Examples of cases when the radar sensor cannot properly detect another vehicle due to environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

About Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, and notifies you if your vehicle is exceeding the speed limit.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.249

- Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. It is always your responsibility to drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.
- Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally.
If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
- To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

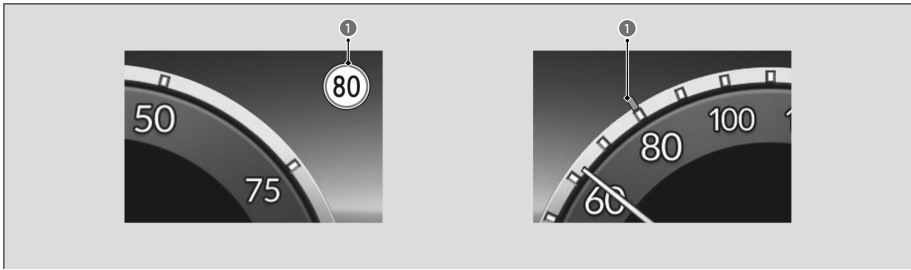
System Operation

When the camera detects traffic signs while the vehicle is being driven, the system displays recognised signs in your vehicle for a programmed time and distance.

If a speed limit sign (1) is detected and the vehicle exceeds the speed limit, the speed limit sign icon will blink.

» If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the  (white) will appear.

*: Not available on all models



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.



You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.

Customized Features ▶ P.226



If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink on the gauge.

Customized Features ▶ P.226



When the traffic sign recognition system malfunctions, (amber) appears on the gauge. If this icon does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System Limitations

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, or in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

- » A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at a junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Blind Spot Information System

About Blind Spot Information System

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.



When the system detects a vehicle, the blind spot information system alert indicator (1) on the outside door mirror on both sides comes on in the following situations:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

When you operate the turn signal lever in the direction of a detected vehicle, the blind spot information indicator blinks and the beeper sounds.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the **Blind spot information not available**^{*1}/**Blind spot information system not available**^{*2} appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

*1: Except Philippines models

*2: Philippines models

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the blind spot information system has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

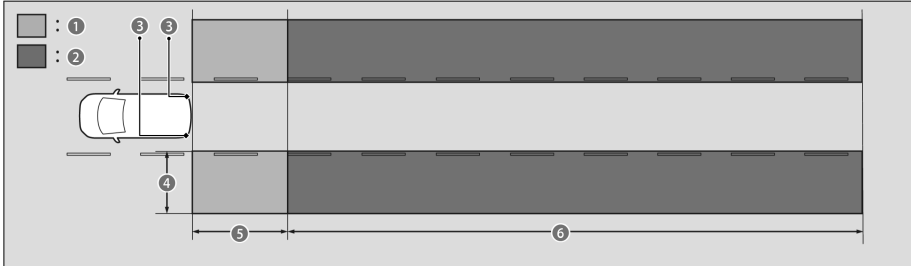


You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

[Customized Features](#) ▶ P.226

System Operation

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h or above.



- ❶ Alert Zone 1
- ❷ Alert Zone 2
- ❸ Radar sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
- ❹ 0.5 ~ 3 metres from vehicle side.
- ❺ 3 metres from rear bumper.
- ❻ 3 ~ 25 metres behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

- The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).
- If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zones 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

🔍 Switching the Display ▶P.315

🔍 Safety Support ▶P.325

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

System Limitations

For proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The blind spot information system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to an adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is obstructed by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.



Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted, or if the rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

Cross Traffic Monitor

About Cross Traffic Monitor

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

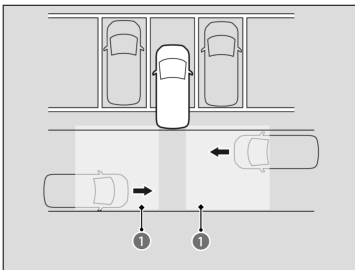
⚠ CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

System Operation



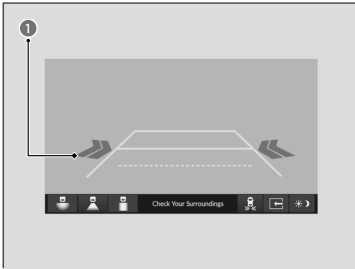
1 Detection Range

When the vehicle speed is less than about 5 km/h, the shift position is in **R**, and the system is ON, the system will detect vehicles approaching from either rear corner and alert you with a buzzer and a visual indication.




The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

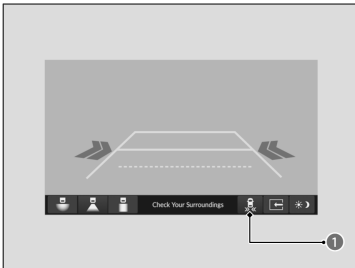
About Screen Display



An arrow icon (1) appears on the side a vehicle is approaching.

- If the  changes to  in amber when the shift position is in **R**, mud, snow or ice, etc. may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.
- If the  comes on when the shift position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- If the display remains the same with the shift position in **R**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon (1).



You can also switch the system on and off using the audio/information screen.

 Customized Features ▶ P.226

System Limitations

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio waves transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.



If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean. Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

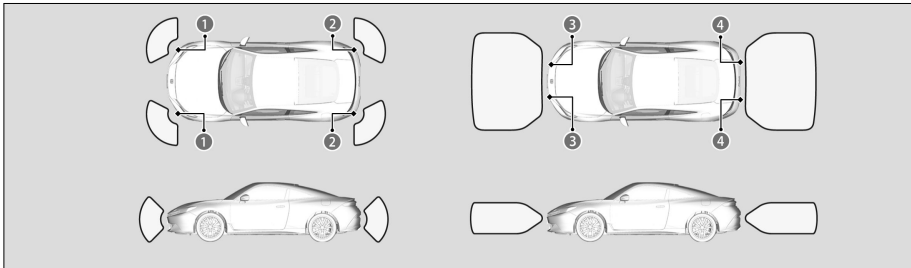
Parking Sensor System

About Parking Sensor System

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

! Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The Sensor Location and Range



- 1 Front Corner Sensors
- 2 Rear Corner Sensors
- 3 Front Centre Sensors
- 4 Rear Centre Sensors

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface. The beeper and the warning display are turned off.^{*1}

🔍 Switching the Display ▶ P.315

🔍 Safety Support ▶ P.325

*1: Australian models

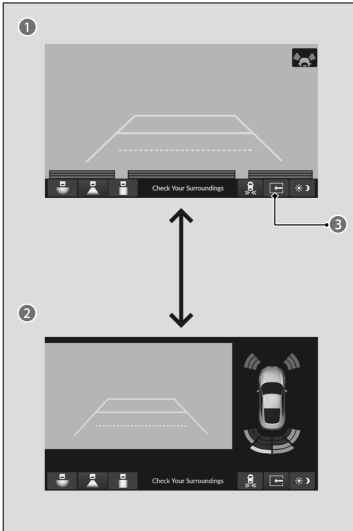
- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.



You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off.

Q Customized Features ▶ P.226

Screen Operation



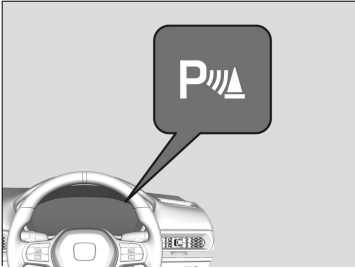
You can switch between split view off (1) and split view on (2) by touching the split screen tab (3).

Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected

The front corner, rear corner, and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift position is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift position is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

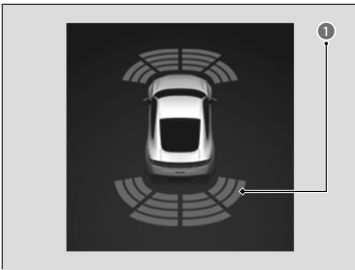
▼ Australian models



The parking sensor indicator blinks.

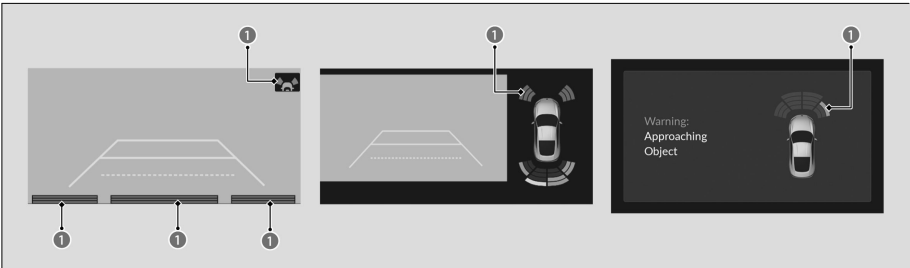
» If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

▼ All models



The indicators (1) show the location of the detected location on the driver information interface.

The indicators (1) also show the position of the detected location on the audio/ information screen.



Colour of Indicator	Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	
		Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors
Yellow ^{*1}	Moderate	-	Front: About 82-63 cm Rear: About 110-67 cm

Colour of Indicator	Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	
		Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors
Amber	Short	Front: About 68-48 cm Rear: About 67-45 cm	Front: About 63-53 cm Rear: About 67-56 cm
	Very short	Front: About 48-38 cm Rear: About 45-35 cm	Front: About 53-45 cm Rear: About 56-47 cm
Red	Continuous	Front: About 38 cm or less Rear: About 35 cm or less	Front: About 45 cm or less Rear: About 47 cm or less

*1: When the indicator is yellow, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the right selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be cancelled when the shift position changes from **P**/**R** to **N**/**D** or vice-versa, or the vehicle speed reaches 14 km/h or higher.

System Limitations

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.



Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features ▶ P.226

About Your Instrument Panel

Indicators

Indicator List.....	302
When Indicators Come On/Blink.....	304

Gauges










Types of Gauges.....	311
----------------------	-----

Driver Information Interface



About the Driver Information Interface.....	315
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area..	315
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area...	327

Indicators

Indicator List

 <p>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) Q, P.304</p>	 <p>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) Q, P.305</p>	 <p>12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Q, P.305</p>	 <p>Seat Belt Reminder Indicator Q, P.305</p>	 <p>Supplemental Restraint System Indicator Q, P.305</p>
 <p>Malfunction Indicator Lamp Q, P.306</p>	 <p>Power System Indicator* Q, P.306</p>	 <p>POWER SYSTEM Indicator* Q, P.306</p>	 <p>Low Fuel Indicator Q, P.306</p>	 <p>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator Q, P.307</p>
 <p>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator Q, P.307</p>	 <p>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator Q, P.307</p>	 <p>Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Q, P.307</p>	 <p>Parking Sensor Indicator* Q, P.308</p>	 <p>Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator* Q, P.308</p>
 <p>Rear Fog Light Indicator* Q, P.139</p>	 <p>System Message Indicator Q, P.327</p>	 <p>Transmission System Indicator Q, P.308</p>	 <p>Shift Position Indicator Q, P.114</p>	 <p>Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator Q, P.156</p>
 <p>Honda S+ Shift Indicator Q, P.158</p>	 <p>SPORT Mode Indicator Q, P.154</p>	 <p>GT Mode Indicator Q, P.154</p>	 <p>INDIVIDUAL Mode Indicator Q, P.154</p>	 <p>COMFORT Mode Indicator Q, P.154</p>

*: Not available on all models

 <p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator Q, P.270</p>	<p>READY</p> <p>READY Indicator* Q, P.110</p>	 <p>Ready Indicator* Q, P.110</p>	<p>EV</p> <p>EV Indicator Q, P.17</p>	<p>BRAKE HOLD</p> <p>Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Q, P.122</p>
<p>*1</p>  <p>Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Q, P.122</p>	 <p>Turn Signal Indicators Q, P.136</p>	 <p>Hazard Warning Indicators</p>	 <p>Lights On Indicator Q, P.136</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Auto High-Beam Indicator* Q, P.140</p>
<p>*1</p>  <p>Adaptive Driving Beam Indicator* Q, P.142</p>	 <p>High Beam Indicator Q, P.138</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) Q, P.308</p>	 <p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) Q, P.248</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) Q, P.309</p>
 <p>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) Q, P.248</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) Q, P.309</p>	 <p>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) Q, P.325</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) Q, P.309</p>	 <p>Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) Q, P.325</p>
 <p>Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator Q, P.309</p>	<p>*1</p>  <p>Safety Support Indicator (Amber) Q, P.309</p>	 <p>Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) Q, P.325</p>	 <p>Immobilizer System Indicator Q, P.70</p>	 <p>Security System Alarm Indicator Q, P.71</p>

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

*: Not available on all models

When Indicators Come On/Blink

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may be displayed at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as having your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If a message is displayed saying the vehicle cannot be driven, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, if multiple indicators come on and **Systems initializing** is displayed, drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. If the indicators do not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.







Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)

Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.

Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.

- » Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.
- » If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.


 **Checking the Brake Fluid** ► P.345

- » If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, pull the  paddle as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking. Also, when Honda S+ Shift is turned on, pull back on the  paddle to decrease the gear level.
- Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the  paddle as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking. Also, when Honda S+ Shift is turned on, pull back on the  paddle to decrease the gear level.

Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.

- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on simultaneously, the braking system may be less effective than usual. Make sure to depress the brake pedal firmly. Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

Blinks if there is a problem with the electric parking brake.

- » Do not use the parking brake.
- » Put the transmission into  to prevent the vehicle from moving, as the parking brake may not work.

- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
- If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks. It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.



Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.

» Do not use the parking brake.



12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.



Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

Comes on or blinks when any seat belts are unfastened.

» Securely fasten seat belts immediately.

- Comes on or blinks when a seat belt in the rear seat is unfastened. Turns off momentarily.
- If this indicator stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s), a detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- You can check whether each seat belt is fastened on the driver information interface.

 Switching the Display ► P.315



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

Comes on if a problem with the airbag system or seat belt tensioners is detected.

Q About Your Airbags ► P.53



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Comes on if there is a problem with the engine's emissions control systems or electric vehicle system*.

▼ Australian and Taiwanese models

- Comes on when there is no fuel and the engine cannot generate electricity, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

▼ All models

- If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control systems and the engine could be damaged.

Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.

» Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.



POWER
SYSTEM

Power System Indicator

▼ Australian and Taiwanese models

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.

» If this indicator stays on constantly, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▼ Except Australian and Taiwanese models

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.



Low Fuel Indicator

Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 6.0 Litres/1.32 Imp gal left).

*: Not available on all models

 Range ▶ P.317

Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no ABS function. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking, so avoid situations such as motorway driving.



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

Blinks when VSA is active.

Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, hill start assist system, or agile handling assist.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator

Comes on when you partially disable VSA.

 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ▶ P.160



Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system or Driver Attention Monitor System*.


- » Stop your vehicle in a safe place. If this indicator stays on after restarting the power system, take your vehicle to a dealer for an inspection immediately.

*: Not available on all models



Parking Sensor Indicator*

Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.

 About Parking Sensor System ▶ P.297




Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator*


May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds to indicate the initialise process is not yet complete.

Comes on and stays on when:

- The system has not been initialised.
- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.
 - » Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.
 - » Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures.
- The system needs to be initialised.

 System Calibration ▶ P.162

If this indicator stays on after blinking, there is a problem with the deflation warning system.

 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* ▶ P.162



Transmission System Indicator

Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.

Blinks if you cannot select **P** due to a transmission system failure.

» Set the parking brake when parking.

- Depending on the situation, you may not be able to turn on the power system.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the cargo space or rear seats.

*: Not available on all models



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.

» LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist* cannot be used.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the cargo space or rear seats.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.

- The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) will come on at the same time.

 [Safety Support Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.309



Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.

- The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) will come on at the same time.

 [Safety Support Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.309



Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator

Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.

 [About Road Departure Mitigation System](#) ▶ P.259



Safety Support Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with any of the safety support systems.

*: Not available on all models

Q Safety Support ▶P.325

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the cargo space or rear seats.

Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor.

- » Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc.

Q About Parking Sensor System ▶P.297

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because the camera's temperature is too high.

Q Front Wide View Camera ▶P.249

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because of poor camera visibility due to poor weather such as rain, fog, snow; or due to dark surroundings such as in early morning, late evening, or the inside of a tunnel at night.

- Comes on when the area around the camera is covered by obstacles.

Q Front Wide View Camera ▶P.249

Comes on when the blind spot information system's sensor is dirty.

- » Park in a safe place and check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles.

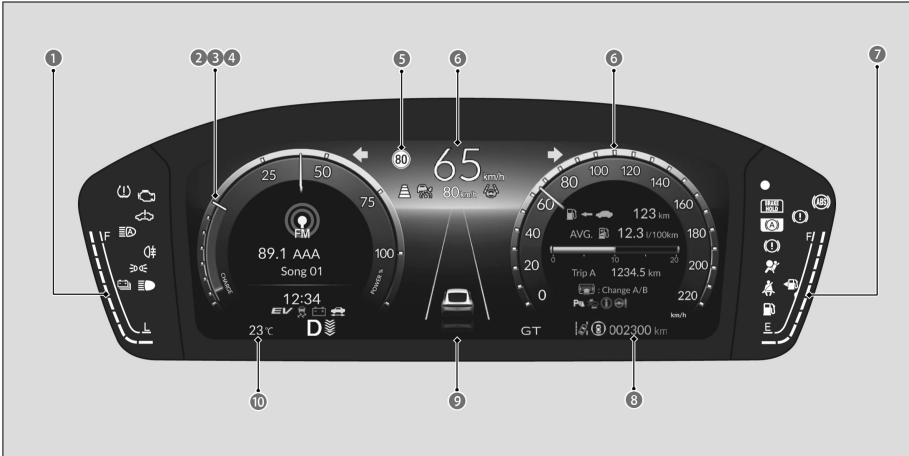
Q About Blind Spot Information System ▶P.291

Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.

- » The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down.

Gauges

Types of Gauges



- ❶ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
- ❷ POWER Gauge
- ❸ CHARGE/DECEL Gauge
- ❹ Tachometer
- ❺ Traffic Sign Recognition System*
- ❻ Speedometer
- ❼ Fuel Gauge
- ❽ Odometer
- ❾ Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist*
- ❿ Outside Temperature

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed.

POWER Gauge

Shows the output of the electric motor.


*: Not available on all models

CHARGE/DECEL Gauge

Shows the degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged. When the deceleration paddle selector is being used, it shows the strength of deceleration.

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute. When Honda S+ Shift is turned on, the **POWER** gauge and **CHARGE/DECEL** gauge are switched to the tachometer.

 Honda S+ Shift ▶ P.158

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

- You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**.
- Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.
- After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

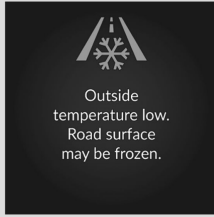
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

- The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:
 - » When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
 - » When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
 - » When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.
- Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can cause the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge to change.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature.



When the power mode is turned to ON while the outside temperature is 3°C or less, the **Outside temperature low** message displays in white. If the outside temperature drops to 3°C or less while driving, the message displays in amber.

- The temperature sensor is in the front bumper.
- Your vehicle, surrounding vehicles, and road heat can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h. Also, the display is not updated until the temperature reading has stabilised. This may take several minutes.



You can adjust the temperature displayed on the gauge.

[Q Customized Features ▶ P.226](#)

Traffic Sign Recognition System*



Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving. If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the detected traffic sign is exceeded.

[Q About Traffic Sign Recognition System ▶ P.287](#)

Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist*

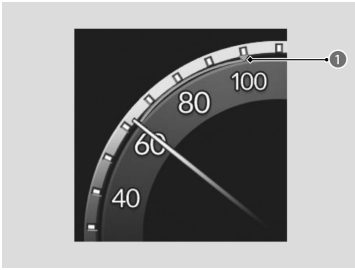
Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*.

[Q About Adaptive Cruise Control \(ACC\) with Low Speed Follow ▶ P.265](#)

[Q About Lane Keeping Assist System \(LKAS\) ▶ P.275](#)

[Q About Traffic Jam Assist ▶ P.279](#)

*: Not available on all models



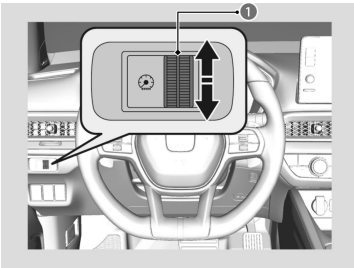
- When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.

1 Set Speed

Odometer

Shows the total distance that your vehicle has travelled.

Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Turn the dial up.

Dim: Turn the dial down.

1 Control Dial

- The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.
 - » The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
 - » The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.
- You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

Driver Information Interface

About the Driver Information Interface



- ① Driver Information Interface Left Side Area
- ② Driver Information Interface Right Side Area

The driver information interface shows your vehicle's condition and alerts you with a warning message when an abnormality is detected.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary.

Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low**, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Limited stopping power!^{*1}/Reduced stopping power^{*2}** message is displayed.

🔍 If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears ▶ P.389

🔍 How to Handle Overheating ▶ P.386

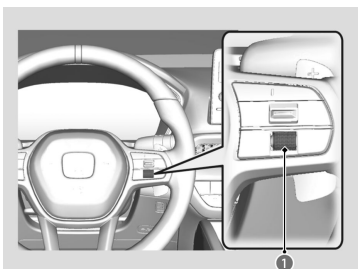
🔍 If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears ▶ P.390

*1: Philippine models

*2: Except Philippine models

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area

Switching the Display



- ① Right Selector Wheel

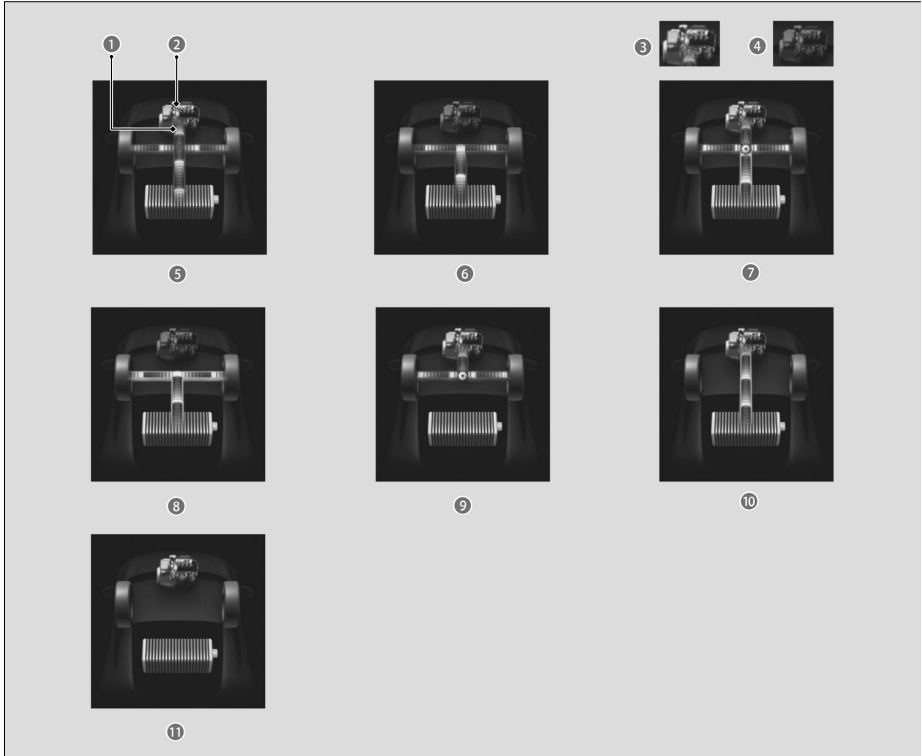
- You can add or delete the meter contents.

🔍 Gauge Display Settings*/Instrument Display Settings* ▶ P.326

Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

Power Flow/Engine Status Display

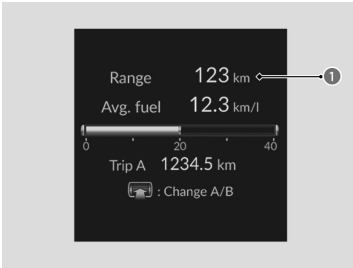
Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



- ❶ Power Flow
- ❷ Engine
- ❸ Engine ON
- ❹ Engine OFF
- ❺ Hybrid (HV): Power is supplied by the motor and the engine. (Blue)
- ❻ Electric Vehicle (EV): Power is supplied by the motor. (Blue)
- ❼ Engine (Direct Drive): Power is being supplied to charge the High Voltage battery and supply power to the wheels. (Blue/Green)
- ❽ Regeneration: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery. (Green)
- ❾ Power is being supplied by the engine only. (Blue)
- ❿ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery. (Green)
- ⓫ The vehicle is stationary with the engine running.

Range

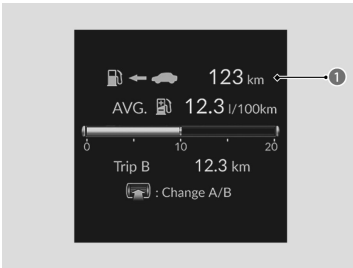
▼ Philippine models



Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

1 Range

▼ Except Philippine models



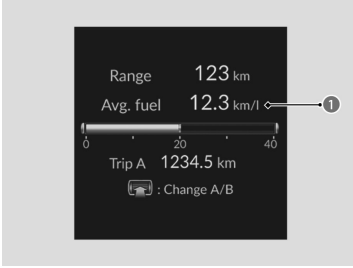
1 Range

- The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Average Fuel Economy

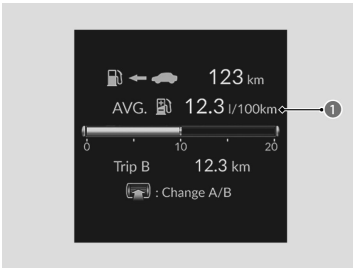
▼ Philippine models

Shows the average fuel economy for trip meters A and B in set intervals.



1 Average Fuel Economy

▼ Except Philippine models



1 Average Fuel Economy

- The average fuel economy displayed may differ from the amount consumed while actually driving.
- If it was reset while parked or driving at a low speed, calculation of fuel economy will start after you resume normal driving.

▼ Except Australian and New Zealand models



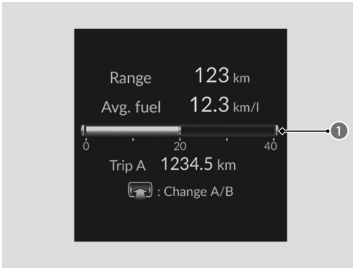
You can change the unit of fuel consumption in either km/l and l/100km.

Q Customized Features ► P.226

Instant Fuel Economy

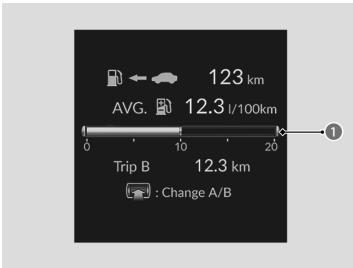
▼ Philippine models

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph.



1 Instant Fuel Economy

▼ Except Philippine models



1 Instant Fuel Economy

Trip Meter

Shows the total distance driven since the last reset.

Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

- To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to 0.0. Additionally, average fuel economy, average speed, and elapsed time will also be reset.
- When the trip meter exceeds 9999.9 km, it returns to 0.0 km.



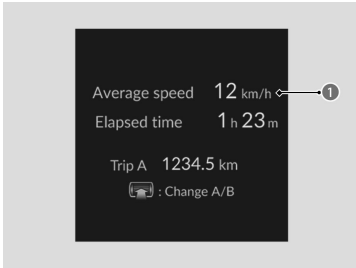
The trip meter can reset automatically after refueling.

🔍 Customized Features ▶ P.226

Average Speed

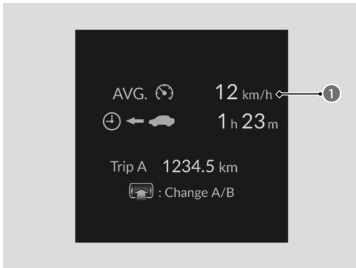
▼ Philippine models

Shows the average speed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.



1 Average Speed

▼ Except Philippine models

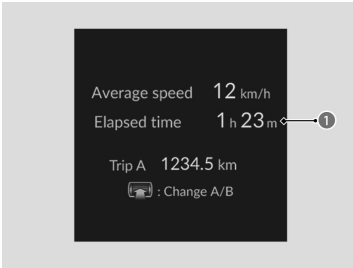


1 Average Speed

Elapsed Time

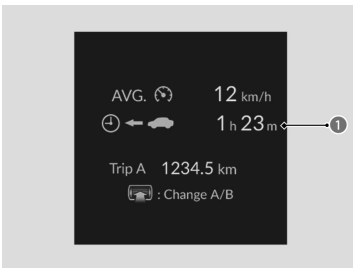
▼ Philippine models

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.



① Elapsed Time

▼ Except Philippine models



① Elapsed Time

Navigation

The compass screen and turn-by-turn directions appear based on the driving guidance provided by Google Maps, Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto.

🔍 Google built-in ▶ P.210

🔍 Apple CarPlay ▶ P.217

🔍 Android Auto™ ▶ P.219

- Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.



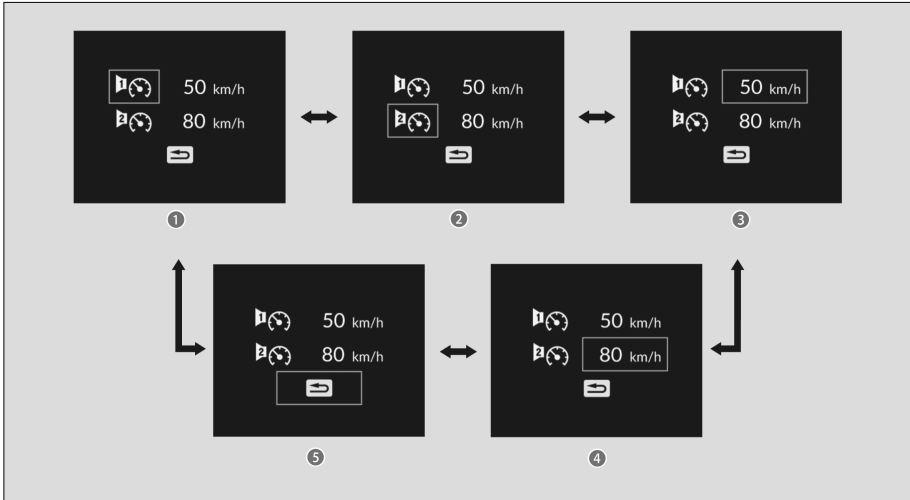
You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

🔍 Customized Features ▶ P.226

Speed Alarm *

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the right selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



- ① Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
- ② Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
- ③ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h*1]
- ④ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h*1]
- ⑤ Back

*1: Default Setting

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.

*: Not available on all models



When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

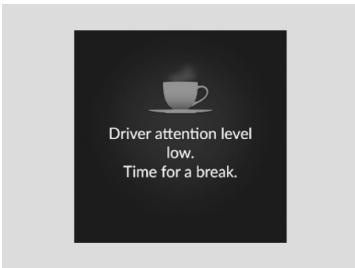
🔍 Switching the Display ▶ P.315

1 Level



If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

▼ Philippine models

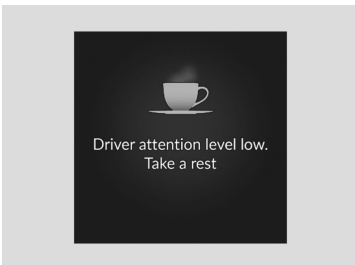


If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break.**^{*1}/**Driver attention level low. Take a rest**^{*2} message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate. If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally. If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

▼ Except Philippine models



*1: Philippine models

*2: Except Philippine models

- The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
- Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



You can change the system settings.

Customized Features ▶ P.226

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.
- The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) or Traffic Jam Assist* is active.

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶ P.275

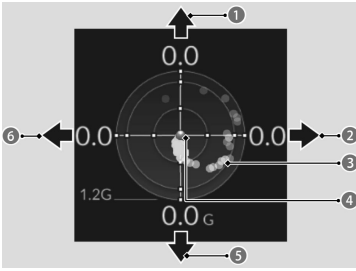
About Traffic Jam Assist ▶ P.279

- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

G-Meter

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.

*: Not available on all models



- ❶ When decelerated while moving forward/
When accelerated while reversing
- ❷ When steering to the left
- ❸ Lateral forces of the past three seconds
(white)
- ❹ Real-time lateral force (red)
- ❺ When accelerated while moving forward/
When decelerated while reversing
- ❻ When steering to the right

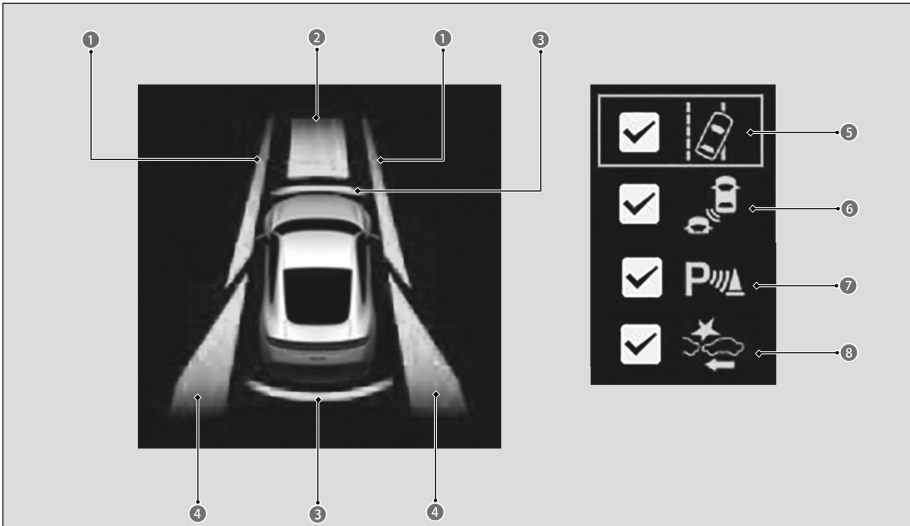
Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

🔍 Seat Belt Reminder ▶ P.93

Safety Support

Safety Support indicates the operating status of the following systems.



- ❶ Operating Status for Road Departure Mitigation System
- ❷ Operating Status for CMBS
- ❸ Operating Status for Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning*
- ❹ Operating Status for Blind Spot Information System
- ❺ Road Departure Mitigation System

*: Not available on all models

6 Blind Spot Information System**7 Parking Sensor System*/Parking Sensor Warning*****8 CMBS**

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.


- Grey: The system is off.


- Amber: There is a problem with the system.




- To turn each system on or off, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.


 [About Road Departure Mitigation System](#) ▶ P.259

 [About Blind Spot Information System](#) ▶ P.291

 [About Collision Mitigation Braking System \(CMBS\)](#) ▶ P.251

 [About Parking Sensor System](#) ▶ P.297

- When all features are ON, the  safety support indicator lights up in green. It lights up in green/grey when one or some of the features are ON, and it lights up in grey when all features are OFF.
- When CMBS is OFF, the  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (grey) also lights up. When the Road Departure Mitigation system is OFF, the  Road Departure Mitigation indicator (grey) also lights up.
- See below if the indicator lights up in amber.

 [Collision Mitigation Braking System \(CMBS\) Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.309

 [Road Departure Mitigation Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.309

 [Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator](#) ▶ P.309

 [Safety Support Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.309

- Even when the parking sensor system*/parking sensor warning* icon is green, if the **Rear sensor setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

 [Customized Features](#) ▶ P.226

Gauge Display Settings*/Instrument Display Settings*

Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.

- [1] Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings*/Instrument display settings*** on the driver information interface.
- [2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.
- [3] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

*: Not available on all models

- Contents that are grey cannot be removed from the right side area.
- When you customize settings, shift to **P**.


Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design.

- [1] Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings*/Instrument display settings*** on the driver information interface.
 - [2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.
 - [3] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.
- When using the **Round minimal*/Round (Cruise)*** gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

Warnings*/Information*

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

- If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.
- When there is a warning message, the  system message indicator lights up.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

 Audio Remote Controls ▶ P.189

 Hands-Free Telephone System ▶ P.220

Clock

Shows the clock.

- You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

 Customize Display ▶ P.328

Clock Setup

Manual time adjustment is not necessary because the clock is using satellite information.

*: Not available on all models

For details on other settings, please refer to the Navigation or Audio instruction manuals for your vehicle.

Gear Display

When Honda S+ Shift is turned on, the gear level and current shift position are displayed.

🔍 Honda S+ Shift ▶ P.158

🔍 About Shift Operation ▶ P.114

- The gear display, shown on the driver information interface, can be toggled on and off.

🔍 Customize Display ▶ P.328

Customize Display

- When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

Arrange audio source on the left side area

You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.

- [1] Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
- [2] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.
- [3] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Select the display content on the left side area

You can change the display content on the left side area.

- [1] Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
- [2] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Power meter content** or **Tachometer content**, then press the left selector wheel.
- [3] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	330
Maintenance Safety	331
Vehicle Safety	331

Maintenance and Inspection Information

Maintenance Schedule	333
Severe Conditions	334
Maintenance Record (on vehicles without separate service record)	335

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet	336
Opening the Bonnet	337
Recommended Engine Oil	338
Oil Check	339
Adding Engine Oil	340
Engine Coolant	341
High Voltage System Coolant	343
Transmission Fluid	344
Brake Fluid	344
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	346
Fuel Filter	346

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Lifting the Wiper Arms	347
Changing the Wiper Blade	347

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres	349
Wear Indicators	350
Tyre Service Life	350
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	351
Snow Traction Devices	351
Tyre Rotation	351

12-Volt Battery

Maintaining 12-Volt Battery	353
Checking the 12-Volt Battery	354
Charging the 12-Volt Battery	355

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning	356
How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter	357

Cleaning

Interior Care	358
Exterior Care	359


Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition.


If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

 Maintenance Schedule ▶ P.333

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.

 Brake Fluid ▶ P.344

- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.

 Checking Tyres ▶ P.349

- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.

 About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting ▶ P.364

- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.

 Changing the Wiper Blade ▶ P.347

Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you or a passenger can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you or a passenger to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - » Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 - » Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be stationary.
 - » Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Do not touch the high voltage battery and wiring (orange).
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
 - » Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - » Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - » Do not set the power mode to ON unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.



Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Maintenance and Inspection Information

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult the service information provided for your vehicle for a more detailed description. Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

▼ Except Australian and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	x 1,000 km	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	x 1,000 mile	12.5	25	37.5	50	62.5	75	87.5	100	112.5	125
	x months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)										
Replace spark plugs ^{*1}	Every 100,000 km (62,000 miles)										
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km (124,000 miles) or 10 years. thereafter every 100,000 km (62,000 miles) or 5 years										
Add genuine injector cleaner agent ^{*2}	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace transmission fluid	Normal	Every 150,000 km (93,000 miles) or 6 years ^{*3}									
	Severe	Every 75,000 km (46,500 miles) or 3 years ^{*4}									
Replace dust and pollen filter	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Replace fuel filter in tank	Normal	Every 180,000 km (111,500 miles) ^{*5}									
	Severe	Every 110,000 km (68,000 miles) ^{*6}									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle	Every 1 year										

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	x 1,000 km	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	x 1,000 mile	12.5	25	37.5	50	62.5	75	87.5	100	112.5	125
	x months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km (6,000miles)										
Visually inspect the following Items:											
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components	Every 10,000 km (6,000miles) or 1year										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/ VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid											

*1: Inspect 20,000 km (Algeria models)

*2: Regular use of injector cleaner is required for models designated for Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Cape Verde, Djibouti, Dominica, Equatorial Guinea, Gambia, Grand Cayman, Guatemala, Guinea, Haiti, Honduras, Iraq, Liberia, Nicaragua, Nigeria, Philippines, Peru, Sierra Leone, Togo, Venezuela

*3: Hongkong, Macao : 80,000 km/4 years

*4: Hongkong, Macao, Jordan, Lebanon, Morocco, Tunisia : 80,000 km/4 years

*5: Africa (except South Africa) and South America (except Brazil) and Indonesia models
Normal : Every 150,000 km(93,750 miles)
Severe : Every 70,000 km(43,750 miles)

*6: It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.



If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under “severe” conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

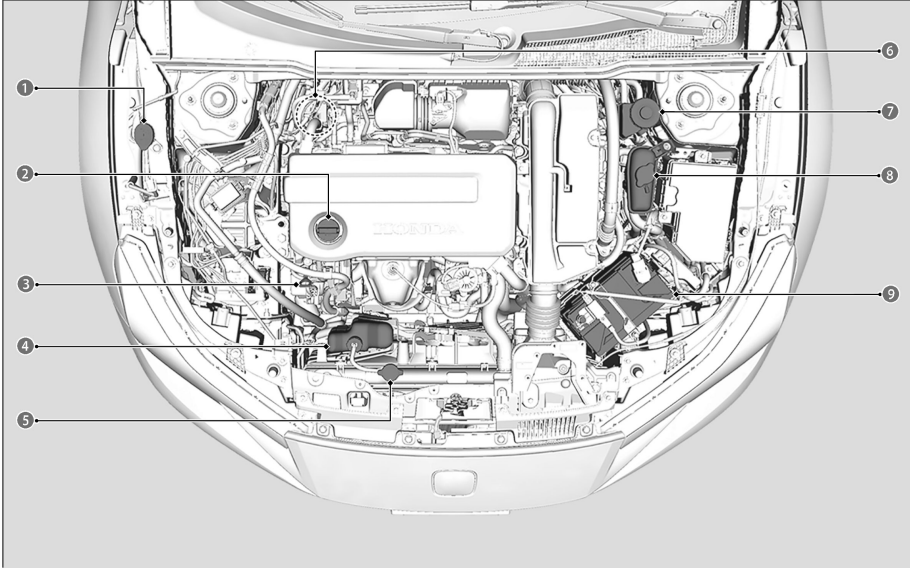
Maintenance Record (on vehicles without separate service record)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

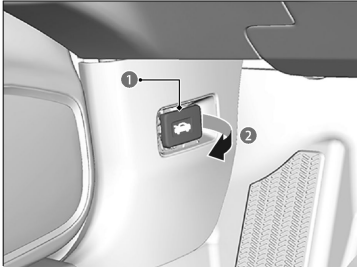
Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



- 1 Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- 2 Engine Oil Fill Cap
- 3 Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
- 4 Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
- 5 Radiator Cap
- 6 Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
- 7 Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
- 8 High Voltage System Coolant Tank
- 9 12-Volt Battery

Opening the Bonnet

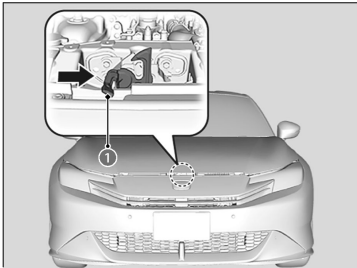


- [1] Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.

» The bonnet will pop up slightly.

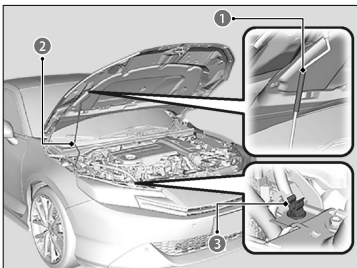
1 Bonnet Release Handle

2 Pull



- [2] Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

1 Lever



- [3] Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

1 Grip

2 Support Rod

3 Clamp

- Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.
- If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine. To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod. Use the foam grip instead.

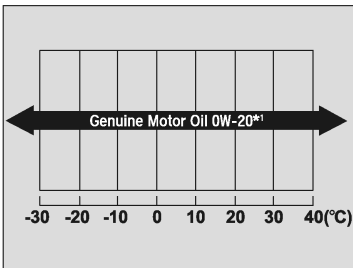
! Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

! Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Recommended Engine Oil

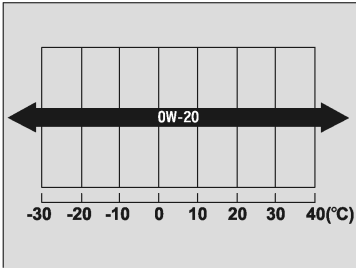
Use a Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

**Genuine Engine Oil**

- Honda Genuine Motor Oil

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.



Commercial Engine Oil

▼ Models with gasoline particulate filter

- API service SP or higher grade fuel-efficient oil
- API Certification Mark "Starburst"
- ACEA C5

▼ Models without gasoline particulate filter

- API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil
- API Certification Mark "Starburst"

The seal shown left indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.



■ Engine Oil Additives

▼ Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

▼ Models without gasoline particulate filter

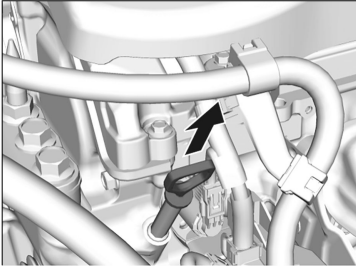
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Oil Check

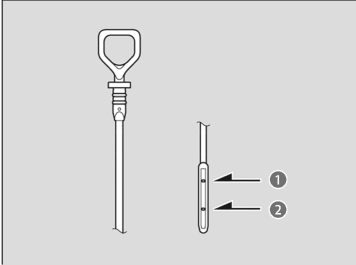
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



- [1] Remove the dipstick (orange).
- [2] Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
- [3] Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

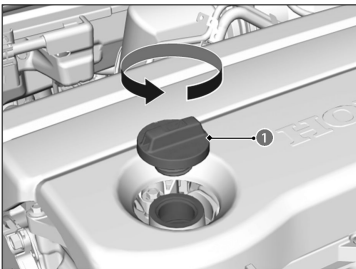


- [4] Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

- 1 Upper Mark
- 2 Lower Mark

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



- [1] Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
- [2] Add oil slowly.
- [3] Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
- [4] Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

- 1 Engine Oil Fill Cap

! Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

Use a neutral detergent to remove it if it spills on the engine cover. Do not use organic solvents such as brake cleaner.

Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible. Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

WARNING

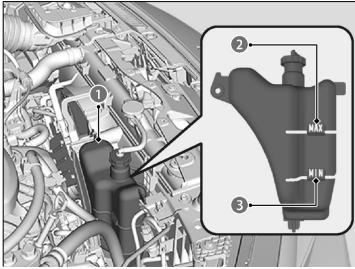
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

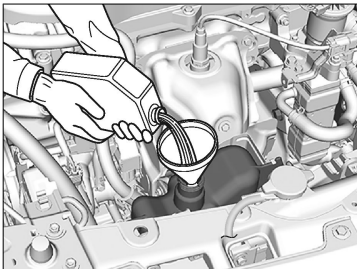


If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

Reserve Tank

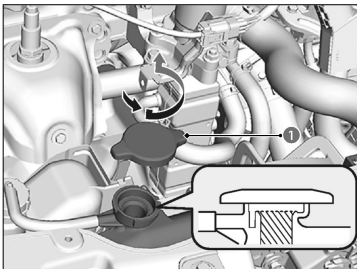


- ① Reserve Tank
- ② MAX
- ③ MIN



- [1] Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- [2] Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - » If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
- [3] Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Radiator



- ① Radiator Cap

- [1] Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- [2] Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- [3] Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- [4] The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- [5] Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

! Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

High Voltage System Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the inverter coolant level every time you refuel.

Have a dealer replace the inverter coolant.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

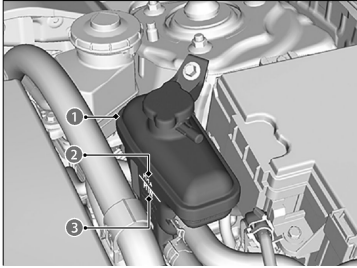
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.



If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration.

Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

Checking the Coolant



- [1] Check the fluid level in the tank.
- [2] If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - » Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

- 1 Coolant Tank
- 2 MAX
- 3 MIN

Transmission Fluid

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HEVF-Type 1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change automatic transmission fluid.

- !** Do not mix Honda HEVF-Type 1 with other transmission fluids. Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HEVF-Type 1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.
- Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HEVF-Type 1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

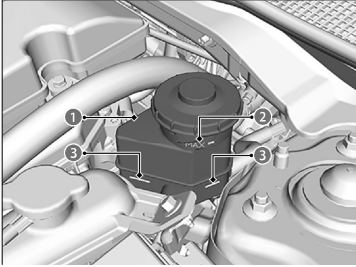
We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

! Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

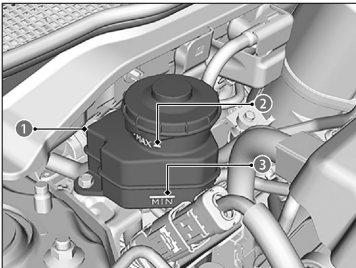
Checking the Brake Fluid

▼ Left-hand drive type



- 1 Reserve Tank
- 2 MAX
- 3 MIN

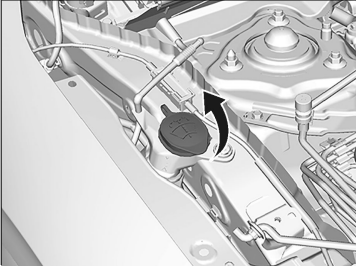
▼ Right-hand Drive Type



- 1 Reserve Tank
- 2 MAX
- 3 MIN

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



If the level is low, add washer fluid.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.



Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.

Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Fuel Filter

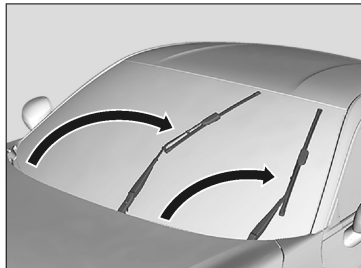
Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

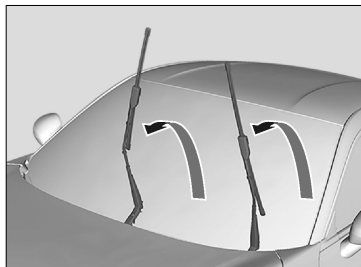
Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Lifting the Wiper Arms



- [1] Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
- [2] Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
 - » Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.



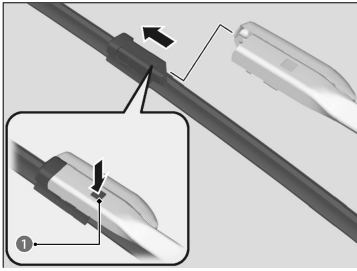
- [3] Lift both wiper arms.

- **When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.**

The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

Changing the Wiper Blade

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.



- [1] Lift both wiper arms.
- [2] Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
- [3] Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
- [4] Lower both wiper arms.
- [5] Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
 - » The wiper arms return to the standard position.

1 Tab

- Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

- Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.
- If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm², 3–4 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

▼ Taiwanese models

- Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.

WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Tyre Requirements for Safe Driving

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

- Tyres are the correct size and type.
- The ground beneath the tyres is in good condition.
- The tyre pressure is correct.
- The tyres do not have any wear, scratches, cracks, or foreign objects.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm², 1-2 psi) per month.

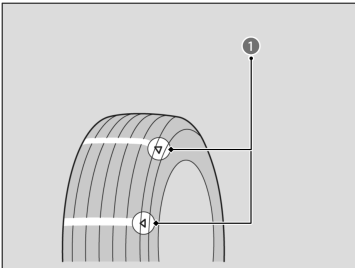
Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm (about 1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

1 Wear Indicator

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability.

This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres

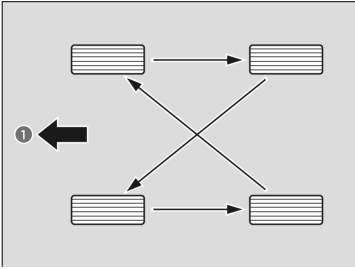
For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

Tyre Rotation

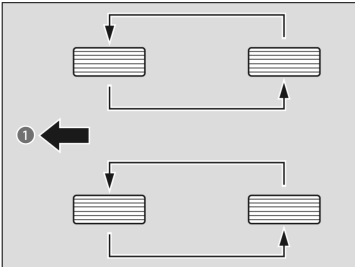
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

■ Tyres without rotation marks



1 Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks



1 Front

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.

Wheel nut torque:

127 N · m (13 kgf · m, 94 lbf · ft)

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

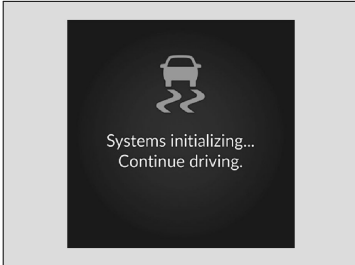
▼ Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

12-Volt Battery

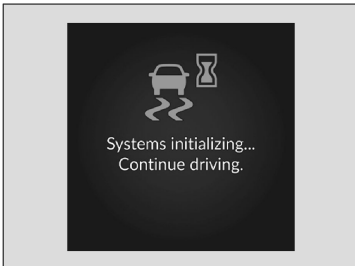
Maintaining 12-Volt Battery

▼ Philippine models



After reconnecting the 12-volt battery: if various indicators come on and the message on the left is displayed on the driver information interface, drive a short distance at a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher. If the indicator does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

▼ Except Philippine models



When you find corrosion, clean the 12-volt battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.

Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the 12-volt battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the 12-volt battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

WARNING

The 12-volt battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the 12-volt battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any 12-volt battery maintenance.

WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns.

Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.

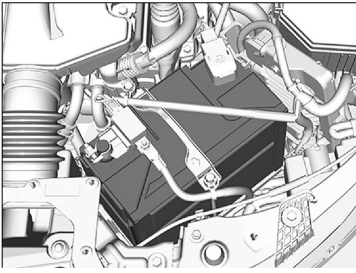
Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

 [About Specifications](#) ▶ P.401

Checking the 12-Volt Battery

The condition of the 12-volt battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the 12-volt battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the 12-volt battery terminals for corrosion monthly.



If your vehicle's 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both 12-volt battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system.

Always disconnect the negative \ominus cable first, and reconnect it last.

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning

▼ Models without MAX COOL button

For proper and safe operation of the heating and cooling system /climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

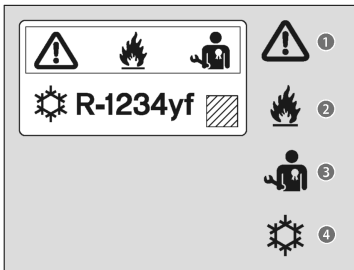
Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

🔍 Label Locations ▶ P.68

🔍 About Specifications ▶ P.401



- ① Caution
- ② Flammable Refrigerant
- ③ Requires Registered Technician to Service
- ④ Air Conditioning System



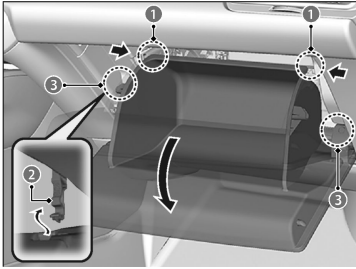
Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment.

To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

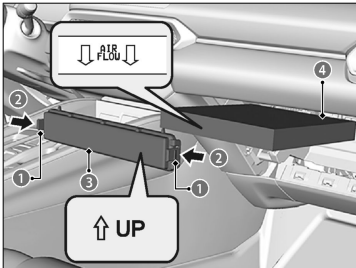
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

🔍 Maintenance Schedule ▶ P.333



- [1] Open the glove box.
- [2] Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
- [3] Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
- [4] Pivot the glove box out of the way.
- [5] Remove the glove box by pulling out the claws.

- ① Tabs
- ② Stopper
- ③ Claws



- [6] Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
- [7] Remove the filter from the case.
- [8] Install a new filter in the case.
 - » Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

- ① Tabs
- ② Push
- ③ Cover
- ④ Dust and Pollen Filter

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.



Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.



Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle. If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.



Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.



After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.

Cleaning The Window

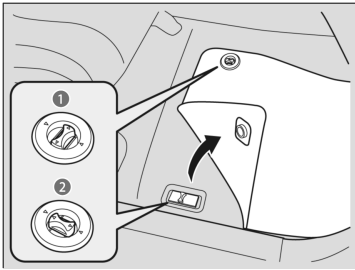
Wipe using a glass cleaner.

! Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

! Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats

Example



- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages.

Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:


- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

- Lock the doors when washing the vehicle. Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.
- If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

 [Lifting the Wiper Arms](#) ▶ P.347

 When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure the transmission is in **N** position.

 [N Position Holding Mode \(Car Wash Mode\)](#) ▶ P.116

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.
- Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or 12-volt battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

- Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

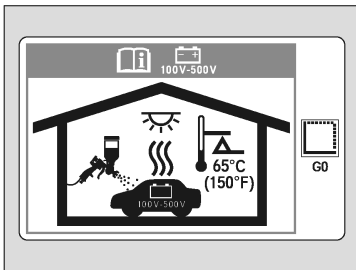
Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Painting the Vehicle*



High temperature may damage the high voltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

*: Not available on all models

Handling the Unexpected

Tools

Types of Tools 363

When a Lightbulb Goes Out

About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting 364

Replacing Light Bulbs 364

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery 365

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 367

Injecting Sealant and Air 370

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre 376

Handling of the jack

Jacking Points 379

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure 380

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak 381

Emergency Power System Off 381

Emergency Power System On 382

If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure 383

What to Do After the Power System Starts 384

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating 386

When a Warning Appears

If the **Engine oil pressure low** Warning Appears 389

If the **Reduced stopping power** Warning Appears 390

Fuses

Checking Fuses 391

Inspecting and Changing Fuses 395

Emergency Towing

About Towing 397

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

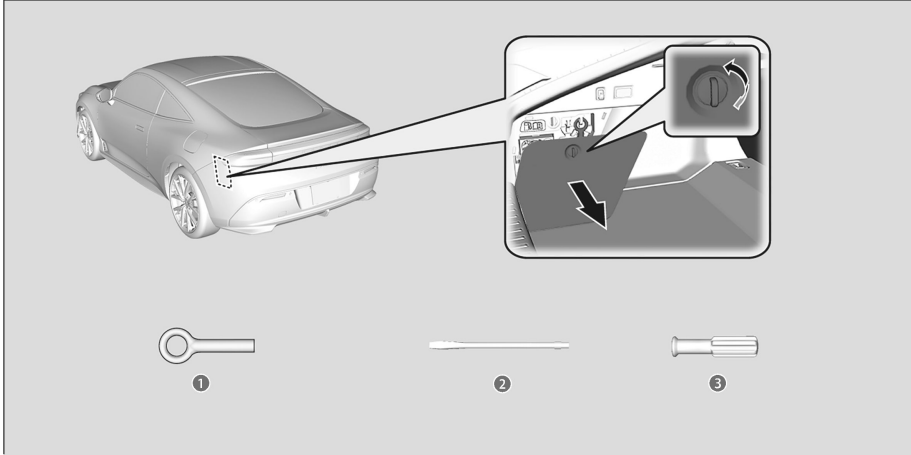
What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door 398

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch 399

Tools

Types of Tools



- ① Detachable Towing Hook
- ② Flat-tip Screwdriver
- ③ Grip

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

When a Lightbulb Goes Out

About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting

The following lights are LED lights. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace them.

- Headlights
- Front Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Position/Daytime Running Lights
- Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Brake Lights
- Taillights
- Rear Side Marker Lights
- High-Mount Brake Light
- Rear Fog Light*
- Rear Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Back-Up Light
- Active Cornering Lights*
- Rear Licence Plate Lights
- Door Outer Handle Ambient Lights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Replacing Light Bulbs


Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs

Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light bulbs.

*: Not available on all models

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery. Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer. A warning mark  is located adjacent to the button battery*.

WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.

Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.



An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

According to Australian Standard;



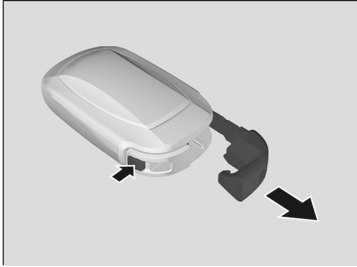
WARNING

- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

*: Not available on all models

- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

Keyless Remote



[1] Remove the built-in key.

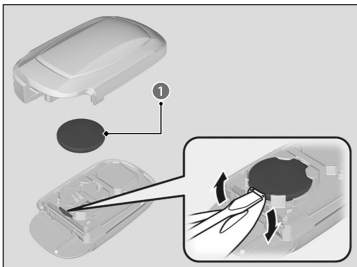


[2] With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.

» Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

» Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

[3] Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



1 Battery

Battery type: CR2032

- Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

How to Park Your Vehicle

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

- [1] Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- [2] Put the transmission into **P**.
- [3] Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

! The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

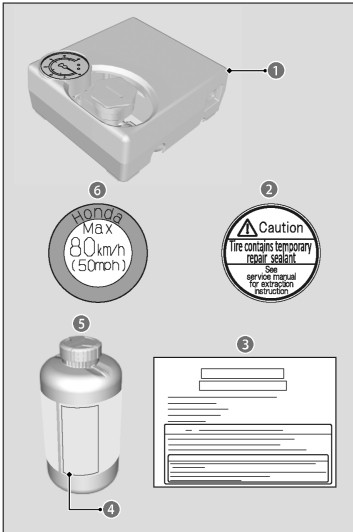
- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the tyre area.
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

! Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

! Do not continue driving with the temporarily repaired tyre. Do not use the temporary repairs for any purpose other than moving your vehicle to the nearest service station to receive professional repairs.

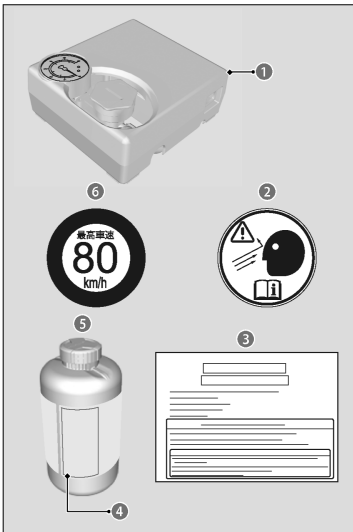
Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

▼ Indonesian, Malaysian and Philippine models



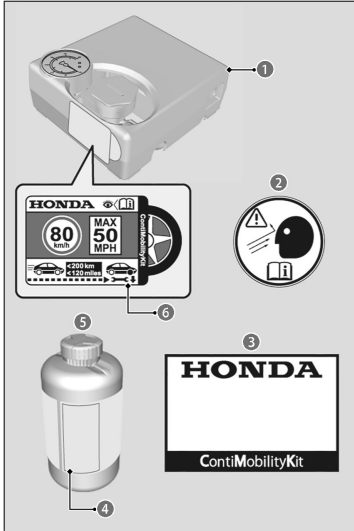
- 1 Air Compressor
- 2 Wheel Label
- 3 Handling Manual
- 4 Expiration Date
- 5 Sealant Bottle
- 6 Speed Restriction Label

▼ Taiwanese models



- 1 Air Compressor
- 2 Wheel Label
- 3 Handling Manual
- 4 Expiration Date
- 5 Sealant Bottle
- 6 Speed Restriction Label

▼ **Australian and New Zealand models**



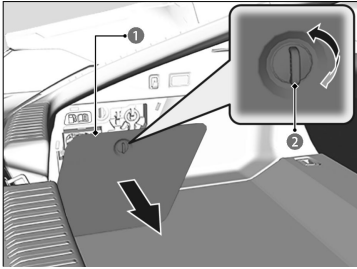
- 1 Air Compressor
- 2 Wheel Label
- 3 Handling Manual
- 4 Expiration Date
- 5 Sealant Bottle
- 6 Speed Restriction Label



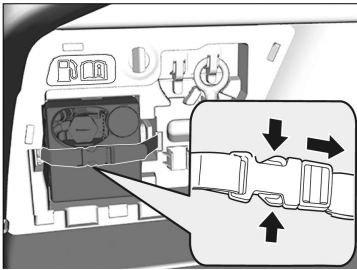
When using the compressor, please note the following points.

- Avoid getting water on it during rain.
- Do not place the product directly on a sandy or dusty area before using it, as inhaling dust may cause a malfunction.
- Do not lubricate with oil or lubricant.
- Never disassemble or modify the product.
- Do not subject the compressor to any impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

Taking out the Tyre Repair Kit



- [1] Remove the lid (1) on left side of the luggage area by rotating the knob (2), then take the kit out from inside.
- [2] Place the kit, face up on flat ground near the flat tyre away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.



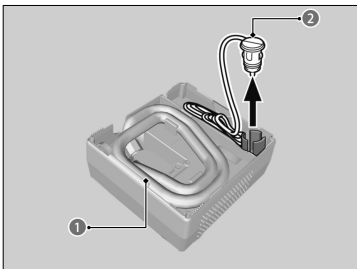
▼ Australian and New Zealand models

Speed restriction labels are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

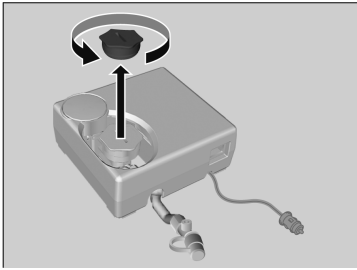
▼ All models

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

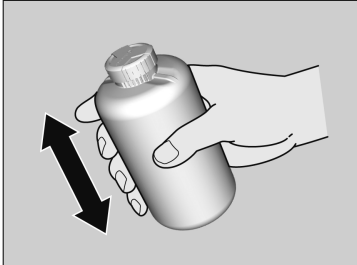
Injecting Sealant and Air



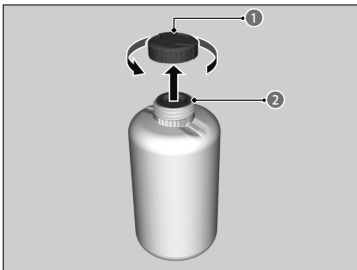
- [1] Take the air compressor hose (1) and plug cord (2) out of the back of the air compressor.



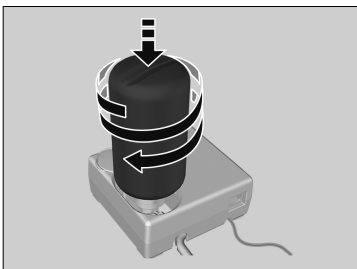
[2] Remove the cap from the air compressor.



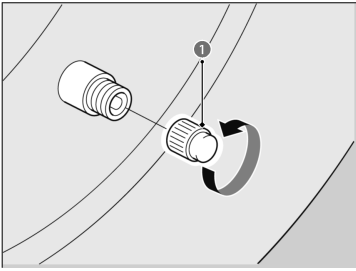
[3] Shake the bottle well.



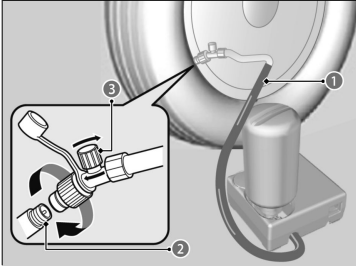
[4] Remove the bottle cap (1).
» Do not remove the sealed cover (2).



[5] Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
» Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

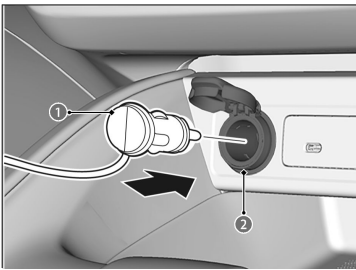


[6] Unscrew the valve cap (1).



[7] Screw the air compressor hose (1) onto the tyre valve (2).

» Make sure the air valve (3) is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

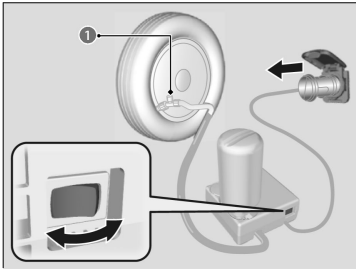


[8] Plug (1) in the compressor to the accessory power socket (2).

[Accessory Power Socket](#) ▶ P.168

[9] Turn on the vehicle's power system.

[Carbon Monoxide Gas](#) ▶ P.27



- [10] Turn on the air compressor and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
 - » The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
 - » Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
- [11] After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
 - » Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - » If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve (1). Be careful not to spill any sealant.
- [12] Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.
- [13] Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
 - » Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.



- [14] Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - » The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.
- [15] Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
 - » Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

1 Indonesian, Malaysian and Philippine models

2 Australian, New Zealand and Taiwanese models

- Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.
- Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.
- See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.
- Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose
- You may hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.
- If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.
- If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

- Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.



Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes.
The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials.
Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.

WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

WARNING

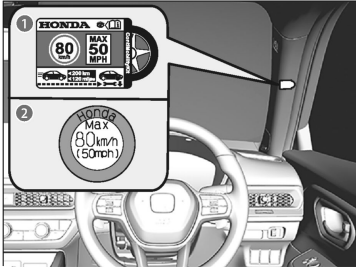
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

▼ Right-hand Drive Type

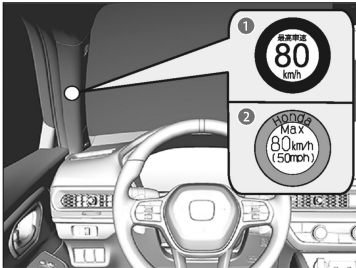


- [1] Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
- [2] Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres (2 to 6 miles).
 - » Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- [3] Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

① Australian and New Zealand models

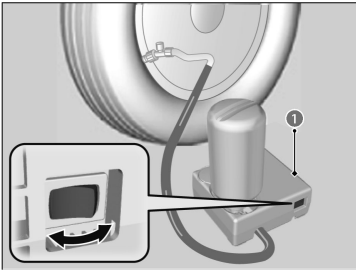
② Indonesian and Malaysian models

▼ Left-hand drive type



① Taiwanese models

② Philippine models



[4] Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor. Do not turn the air compressor (1) on to check the pressure.

Q [Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre](#) ▶P.376

[5] If the air pressure is

- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):
Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

Q [About Towing](#) ▶P.397

- Specified air pressure (see the label on driver's doorjamb) or more:
Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (see the label on driver's doorjamb):
Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

Q [Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre](#) ▶P.376

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

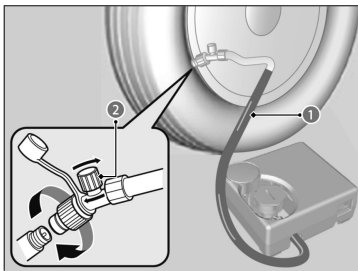
» The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres (120 miles).

[6] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

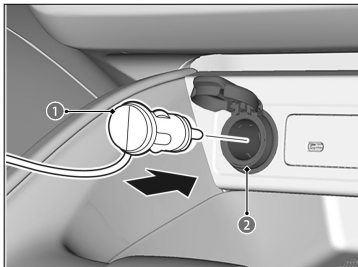
! Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



- [1] Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
- [2] Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
- [3] Remove the valve cap.
- [4] Attach the air compressor hose (1) onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
 - » Make sure the air valve (2) is closed.

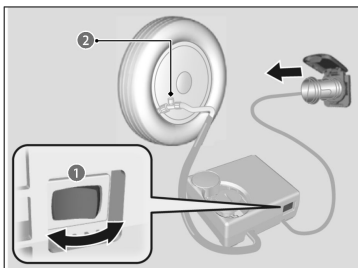


- [5] Plug (1) in the compressor to the accessory power socket (2).
 - » Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

Accessory Power Socket ▶ P.168

- [6] Turn on the vehicle's power system.

Carbon Monoxide Gas ▶ P.27



- [7] Turn on the air compressor switch (1) to inflate the tyre.
 - » The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - » If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.
- [8] Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- [9] Turn off the air compressor.
 - » Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - » If overinflated, turn the air valve (2) to deflate.
- [10] Turn off the vehicle's power system, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.
- [11] Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- [12] Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

- Keep the power system on while injecting air.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

 **WARNING**

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

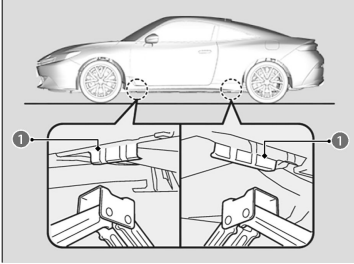
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Handling of the jack

Jacking Points

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure


If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.

- The **Temperature is too cold for vehicle to operate**^{*1} / **Temperature too low for vehicle to operate**^{*2} message appears.

You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature.

Have the vehicle towed to a warmer location.

 [About Towing](#) ▶ P.397

- The **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears. Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.



 [If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak](#) ▶ P.381

- The transmission system indicator blinks and the **Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked. See your dealer.**^{*1} / **Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.**^{*2} message appears.

*1: Philippine models


*2: Except Philippine models

Check the shift position.

- The transmission is not in .
- Put the transmission into .


Check the power system starting procedure.

Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.

 [Turn on Power System](#) ▶ P.110

Check the immobilizer system indicator.

- When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.

 [Immobilizer System](#) ▶ P.70

 [Indicator List](#) ▶ P.302

Check the fuses.

- Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 [Inspecting and Changing Fuses](#) ▶ P.395

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

🔍 Jump Starting Procedure ▶ P.383

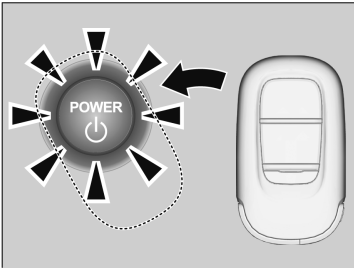
Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

🔍 Emergency Power System On ▶ P.382

Do not hold the **POWER** button for more than 15 seconds.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

Follow the steps below if the **POWER** button does not turn on the power or start the engine.



- [1] Press the **POWER** button.
- [2] Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the keyless remote within 30 seconds. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
- [3] Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds.
 - » If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.
- The steering wheel will not lock.



If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

- [1] Make sure the parking brake is applied.
- [2] Check that the transmission is in **P**, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
- [3] Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

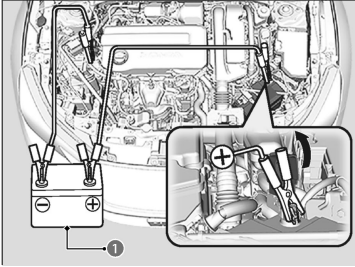
This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

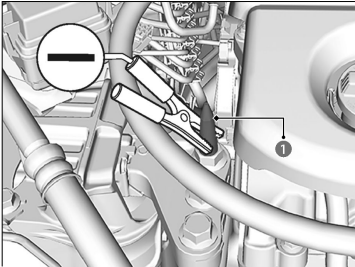
If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery



1 Stud Bolt

- [1] Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery \oplus terminal.
- [2] Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery \oplus terminal.
 - » Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - » When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
- [3] Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery \ominus terminal.
- [4] Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- [5] If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
- [6] Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

⚠ WARNING


A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.


Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.




If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze.

Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

 Securely attach the jumper cables' clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates.
Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

 12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

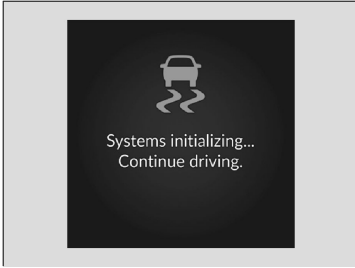
 You cannot use the terminal to jump start another vehicle or to charge the 12-volt battery.

What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

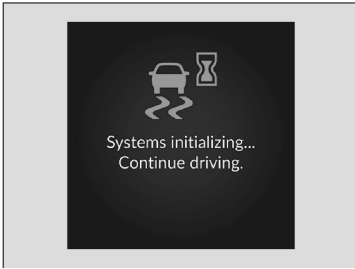
- [1] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
- [2] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \ominus terminal.
- [3] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery \oplus terminal.
- [4] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

▼ **Philippine models**



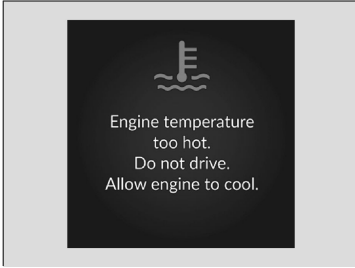
After re-connecting the 12-volt battery: if various indicators come on and the message on the left is displayed on the driver information interface, drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). If the indicator does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

▼ **Except Philippine models**



Overheating

How to Handle Overheating



Overheating symptoms are as follows:


- The **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

-  If the **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

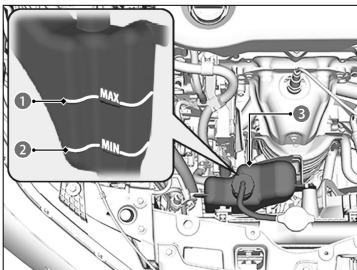
! Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

The Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

- [1] Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
 - » Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into **P**. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
- [2] Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.
 - » If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

The Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

- [1] Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
- [2] Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - » No steam or spray present: Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
 - » Steam or spray is present: Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.



- 1** MAX
- 2** MIN
- 3** Reserve Tank

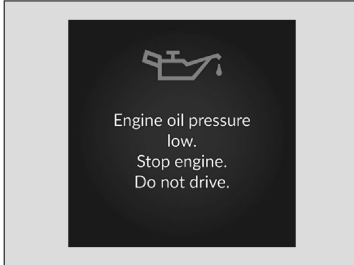
- [3] Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface goes off.
 - » If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
- [4] Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - » If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - » If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

- If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.
- If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

When a Warning Appears

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears



! Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

What to do as soon as the warning appears

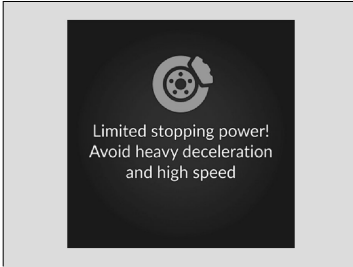
- [1] Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
- [2] If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

What to do after parking the vehicle

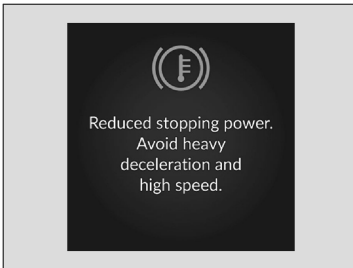
- [1] Turn the power system off and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
- [2] Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
 - » Add oil as necessary.
 - Oil Check ▶ P.339**
- [3] Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.
 - » The warning disappears: Start driving again.
 - » The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears

▼ Philippine models



▼ Except Philippine models



■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

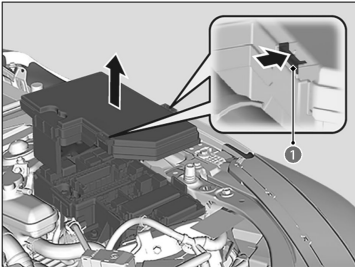
Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Fuses

Checking Fuses

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Located at the engine compartment on the left side.

» Push the tabs (1) to open the box.

- Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover or the image below. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Battery	175A
	--	40A
	--	40A
	Fuse Box Option1	60A
2	--	40A
	--	40A
	Audio Amp	30A
	Fuse Box Main	60A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	--	30A
	--	30A
	--	70A
3	Rear Defroster	30A
	A/C PTC1*	(40A)
	Blower Motor	40A
	A/C PTC2*	(40A)

*: Not available on all models

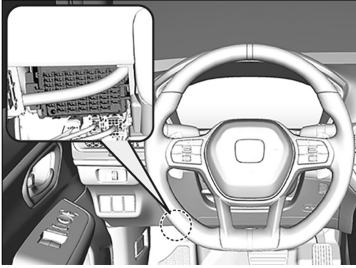
	Circuit Protected	Amps
	ESB	40A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40A
	RFC	40A
4	P-ACT Motor	30A
	IG MAIN	30A
	— —	30A
	Relay Module2	30A
	Option6	30A
	Wiper	30A
	EPS	70A
5	Relay Module1	30A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40A
	ENG WATER PUMP	40A
	Fuse Box Main2	40A
6	— —	—
7	IG Main2	30A
8	— —	—
9	— —	—
10	—	(7.5A)
11	— —	—
12	— —	—
13	— —	—
14	BATT IR	10A
15	BATT SNSR	10A
16	— —	—
17	Washer	15A
18	Horn	15A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
19	BACK UP	15A
20	AUDIO	15A
21	IGP	15A
22	BACKUP FI-ECU	10A
23	DBW	15A
24	RFC Relay	7.5A
25	PCU EWP	7.5A
26	P-ACT ECU	7.5A
27	LCM L	15A
28	INJ	15A
29	Stop Lights	10A
30	LCM R	15A
31	IG Coil	15A
32	EVTC	20A
33	Hazard	15A
34	— —	—
35	— —	—
36	IG 1 MON2	7.5A
37	— —	—
38	IGB	10A
39	IGA	15A
40	— —	—
41	IGPS [LAF]	10A
42	— —	—
43	— —	—
44	— —	—

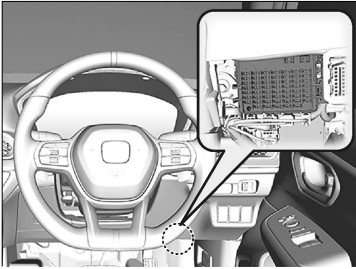
Interior Fuse Box

▼ Left-hand Drive Type

Located under the dashboard.



▼ Right-hand Drive Type


























- Fuse locations are shown on the label on the steering column lower cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

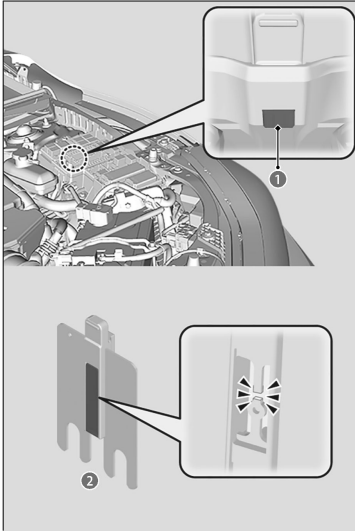
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Driver's Side Power Window	20A
2	Passenger's Side Power Window	20A
3	— —	—
4	— —	—
5	Option	10A
6	SRS	10A
7	Hatch MTR	10A
8	USB Charger	10A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
9	Front Accessory Socket	20A
10	Door Lock	20A
11	METER	10A
12	Option3 (ST CUT)	10A
13	OPTION2	10A
14	Option6 (VB SOL)	10A
15	—	(10A)
16	SBW	10A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
17	— —	—
18	 —	(20A)
19	— —	—
20	 Rear Fog Light	10A
21	— —	—
22	 keyless access system	10A
23	 —	(10A)
24	 Out Handle	20A
25	 IMG	10A
26	 SRS	10A
27	 ACG / D/V	20A
28	 Option5	10A
29	 Fuel Pump	15A
30	 Left Side Door Unlock	10A
31	 Right Side Door Unlock	10A
32	— —	—
33	— —	—
34	— —	—
35	— —	—
36	— —	—

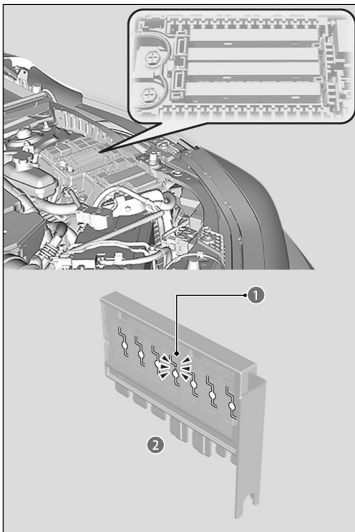
	Circuit Protected	Amps
37	— —	—
38	— —	—
39	 Right Side Door Lock	10A
40	— —	—
41	— —	—
42	 ESB	10A
43	 AIRCON	10A
44	 DRL	10A
45	 ACC	10A
46	 ACC KEY LOCK	10A
47	 Left Side Door Lock	10A
48	 Seat Heaters	(20A)
49	— —	—
50	— —	—
51	— —	—
52	 IGA2	15A
53	— —	—
54	 Option1	10A
55	— —	—
56	 Adaptive Damper System	30A

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



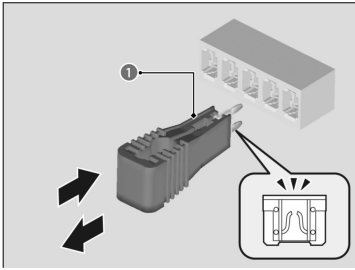
- [1] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
- [2] Remove the fuse box cover.
- [3] Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - » Look at the fuse through the hole.
 - » If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

- 1 Hole
- 2 Main Fuse



- [4] Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
 - » Look into the space between the fuses.
 - » If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

- 1 Blown Fuse
- 2 Combined Fuse



- [5] Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
- » If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

1 Fuse Puller

- Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.
- Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.
- Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Emergency Towing

About Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

- Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.
- When having your vehicle towed with the front wheels lifted, make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

 [Parking Brake](#) ▶ P.118



Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.

It is very dangerous because ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.



Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Flatbed Equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

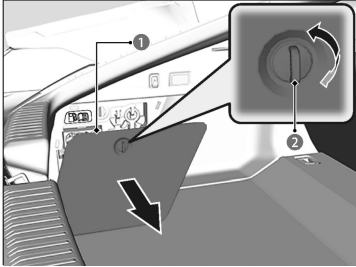
Wheel Lift Equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.

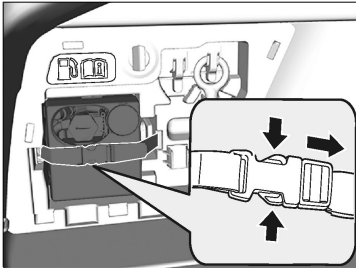
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



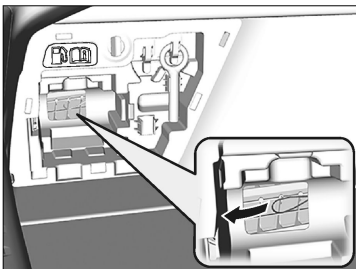
- [1] Remove the lid (1) on left side of the luggage area by rotating the knob (2), then take the kit out from inside.



- [2] Pull the release cord toward you.
» Lightly pull the release cord until it stops.

- [3] Open the fuel fill door.

 How to Refuel  P.133

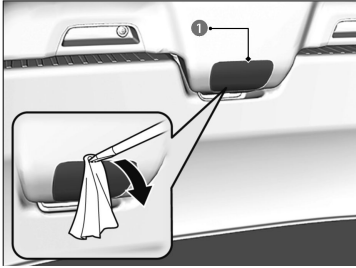


Pulling the release cord too strongly can result in damage to the cord.

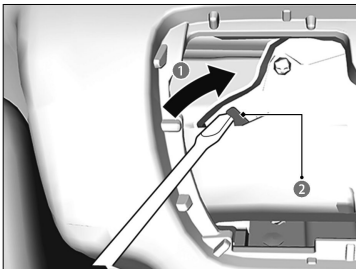
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch



- [1] Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover (1) on the back of the hatch.
» Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



- [2] To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding (1) the lever (2) with the flat-tip screwdriver.

- Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Vehicle Information

Specifications

About Specifications 401

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine
Number, Motor Number and Transmission
Number 404

Utility Compliance*

Environmental Protection Regulation 406

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves 407

Open Source Licence

Summary 409

*: Not available on all models

Specifications

About Specifications

Basic Information

Model	PRELUDE	
	1,464 kg ^{*1}	
Curb Weight	1,466 kg ^{*2}	
	1,468 kg ^{*3}	
	1,471 kg ^{*4}	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,850 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	1,080 kg
	Rear	820 kg

*1: Indonesian models

*2: Malaysian and Philippine models

*3: Australian and New Zealand models

*4: Taiwanese models

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf) ^{*1}	
	HFC-134a (R-134a) ^{*2}	
Charge Quantity	405 - 455 g	

*1: Australian, New Zealand and Taiwanese models

*2: Indonesian, Malaysian and Philippine models

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	81.0 x 96.7 mm	
Displacement	1,993 cm ³	
Compression ratio	13.9 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7G11 Y

Fuel

- Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher^{*1}
- Unleaded petrol, research octane number 90 or higher^{*2}
- Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher^{*3}

Fuel Tank Capacity 40.0 L

*1: Australian, Malaysian, New Zealand and Philippine models

*2: Indonesian models

*3: Taiwanese models

12-Volt Battery

Capacity 36AH(5)/45AH(20)

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity 1.5 L

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)*1	LED
Headlights (High Beam)*1	LED
Headlights (High/Low Beam)*2	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights(on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED
Rear Side Marker Lights	LED
Back-Up Lights	LED
Rear Fog Light*	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Door Outer Handle Ambient Lights	LED
	Map Lights LED
	Luggage Area Lights LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights 2.3 W
	Front Console Light LED
Interior Lights	Glove Box Light LED
	Door Courtesy Lights LED
	Door Pocket Lights LED
	Foot Lights LED
	Ambient Lights LED

*1: Except Taiwanese models

*2: Taiwanese models

Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HEVF-Type 1
Capacity	Change 2.2 L

*: Not available on all models

Engine Oil

Recommended	▼ Models with gasoline particulate filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 • ACEA C5, API service SP or higher grade 0W-20
	▼ Models without gasoline particulate filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 • API service SN or higher grade 0W-20
Capacity	Change	3.7 L
Capacity	Change including filter	4.0 L

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

Recommended Engine Oil P.338

Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water 5.54 L
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.62 L in the reserve tank)

Tyre

	Size	235/40R19 96W
Regular	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	19 x 8 1/2J

Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

Vehicle Dimensions		
Length		4,520 mm ^{*1}
		4,522 mm ^{*2, *3}
Width		1,880 mm
Height		1,355 mm
Wheelbase		2,605 mm ^{*1, *3}
		2,604 mm ^{*2}
Track		1,625 mm ^{*1}
	Front	1,626 mm ^{*2}
		1,627 mm ^{*3}
	Rear	1,615 mm ^{*1, *3}
		1,625 mm ^{*2}

*1: Taiwanese models

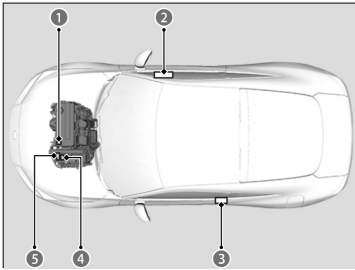
*2: Australian, Indonesian, Malaysian and New Zealand models

*3: Philippine models

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.

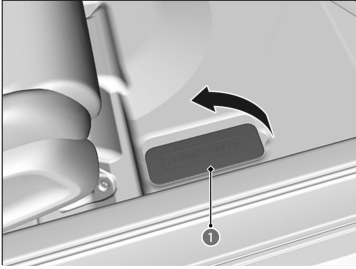


- ① Engine Number
- ② Vehicle Identification Number
- ③ Certification Label*/Vehicle Identification Number*
- ④ Transmission Number
- ⑤ Motor Number

*: Not available on all models

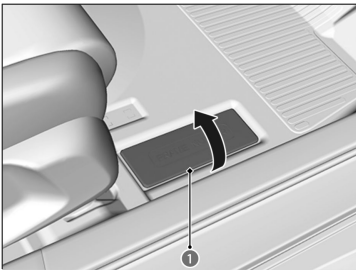
▼ **Left-hand Drive Type**

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



① Cover

▼ **Right-hand Drive Type**



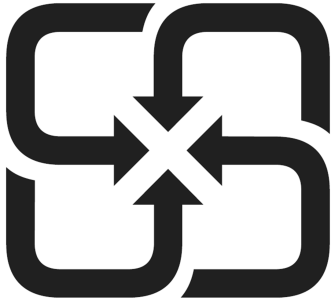
① Cover

It is prohibited to cover, paint, weld, cut, perforate, alter or remove the VIN.

Utility Compliance*

Environmental Protection Regulation

▼ Taiwanese models



Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.

Close proximity exhaust noise test

▼ Taiwanese models

- Requirements for testing: Since the engine generally does not run while the vehicle is stationary, you must wait until the high voltage battery is depleted by at least 70% so that the engine will automatically start and continue running to supply electricity to the battery. During this charging period, it is possible to test the exhaust noise. Before testing, make sure that all the electrical components (climate control system, lights, etc.) are turned off.
- Depleting the high voltage battery: To accelerate battery depletion, set the power system to READY and then turn on all the electrical components.

*: Not available on all models

Devices that Emit Radio Waves*

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

▼ Taiwanese models

低功率射頻器材技術規範 章節3.8.2警語

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▼ Malaysian models

Self Labelling Programme (SLP)





*: Not available on all models

▼ Indonesian models

Keyless Access System FOB
<p>The web-address of QR Code is: https://sertifikasi.postel.go.id/sertifikat/92209</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

▼ Philippine models

Keyless Access System BCM	Keyless Access System FOB
<p>No.ESD-RCE-2023291</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>NTC</p> <p>Type Accepted</p> </div>	<p>No.ESD-RCE-2022596C</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>NTC</p> <p>Type Accepted</p> </div>

Open Source Licence

Summary

Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.

https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/global/business_ic_meter/

TCU Open Source Licence

To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligations to disclose source code, that is contained in this product, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents please visit <https://opensource.lge.com>. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

Index

Numbers

12-Volt Battery	353
Charging System Indicator	305
If the Battery Is Dead	383
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery)	354

A

About System Updates	193
About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment	186
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	124
Indicator	307
Accessory Power Socket	168
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	159
Active Cornering Lights	139
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	265
Indicator (Amber)	308
Indicator (White/Green)	266
Adaptive Driving Beam	142
Indicator	142
Additives	
Engine Coolant	341
Engine Oil	339
Window Washer Fluid	346
Adjusting	
Clock	198
Front Seats	88
Head Restraints	88
Sound	200
Steering Wheel	85
Agile Handling Assist	161
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)	176
Changing the Mode	176
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	149
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	176
Sensors	185
Synchronization Mode	183
Using Automatic Climate Control	182
Air Pressure	349, 402
Airbags	53
After a Collision	53

Airbag Care	63
Event Data Recorder	4
Front Airbags (SRS)	54
Indicator	61, 305
Knee Airbag	56
Sensors	53
Side Airbags	58
Side Curtain Airbags	60
Android Auto™	219
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	124
Indicator	307
Apple CarPlay	217
Armrest	89
Audio Playback via Bluetooth® Device	209
Audio Playback via USB Device	207
Audio Playback via Wired Connection	206
Audio Remote Controls	189
Audio System Basic Operation	186
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking	83
Auto High-Beam	140
Indicator	140
Automatic Brake Hold	121
Indicator	123
Automatic Brake Hold System	
Indicator	122
Automatic Intermittent Wipers	147
Automatic Lighting	136
Automatic Lighting Off Feature	138
Automatic Power Off	109
Average Fuel Economy	318
Average Speed	320

B

Belts (Seat)	92
Beverage Holders	173
Blind Spot Information System	291
Bluetooth® Device	209
Brake Assist System	118
Brake System	118
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	124
Automatic Brake Hold	121
Brake Assist System	118
Foot Brake	118
Indicator (Amber)	305

Indicator (Red).....	304
Parking Brake.....	118
Braking	
Fluid.....	344
Brightness Control	314
Built-in Key	72
Bulb Replacement	364
Bulb Specifications	402

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas	27
Carrying Luggage	106
Centre Console Box	167
Certification Label	404
Changing Bulbs	364
Child Restraint System	31
Booster Seats.....	51
Child Restraint System for Infants.....	33
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt.....	47
Larger Children.....	50
Rear-facing Child Restraint System.....	33
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	35
Using a Tether.....	49
Child Safety	31
CHARGE/DECEL Gauge	312
Cleaning the Exterior	359
Cleaning the Interior	358
Climate Control System	176, 356
Changing the Mode.....	176
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows.....	149
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	176
Sensors.....	185
Synchronization Mode.....	183
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	182
Clock	198, 327
Adjusting the Clock.....	198
Wallpaper Setup.....	199
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)	251
Coat Hooks	171
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	251
Indicator (Amber).....	309
Indicator (Grey).....	325

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives	236
Compatible USB Flash Drives.....	236
iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility.....	236
Recommended Devices.....	237
Connecting a Device	190
About Wired Connections.....	190
About Wireless Connections.....	191
Continuously Variable Transmission	
Fluid.....	344
Coolant (Engine)	341
Adding to the Radiator.....	342
Adding to the Reserve Tank.....	342
Overheating.....	386
Creeping (Transmission)	127
Cross Traffic Monitor	294
Cup Holders	173
Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist.....	313
Customize Display	328
Customized Features	226
Defaulting All the Settings.....	234
How to Customize the General Settings.....	226
How to Customize the Profile Settings.....	234
How to Customize the Vehicle Settings.....	230

D

Daytime Running Lights	139
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	204
Dead Battery	383
Deceleration Paddle Selector	156
Defaulting All the Settings	234
Defaulting General Settings.....	235
Defaulting Vehicle Settings.....	235
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	149
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	407
Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)	204
Dipstick (Engine Oil)	339
Directional Signals (Turn Signal)	136
Display Audio Basic Operations	194
About Media Playback.....	205
Adjusting the Sound.....	200
Audio Playback via <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Device.....	209

- Audio Playback via USB Device 207
 - Audio Playback via Wired Connection 206
 - Changing the Display Settings 201
 - Clock 198
 - Google built-in 210
 - Home Screen 195
 - Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) 204
 - Playing FM Radio 201
 - Power Flow 214
 - Radio Data System (RDS) 202
 - Reboot Audio 195
 - Start Up 194
 - System Updates 196
 - Trip Computer 198
 - User Information 211
 - Display Audio Customized Features** 226
 - Customized Features 226
 - Display Audio Other Operations** 216
 - Android Auto™ 219
 - Apple CarPlay 217
 - Hands-Free Telephone System 220
 - Wi-Fi Connection 216
 - Display Settings** 201
 - Door Mirrors** 99
 - Doors**
 - Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 83
 - Door and Hatch Open Message 24
 - Keys 69
 - Locking/Unlocking the Doors from Inside 82
 - Drive Mode System** 154
 - Driver Attention Monitor** 322
 - Driver Information Interface** 315
 - Average Fuel Economy 318
 - Average Speed 320
 - Clock 327
 - Customize Display 328
 - Driver Attention Monitor 322
 - Elapsed Time 321
 - G-Meter 324
 - Gauge Display Settings 326
 - Gear Display 328
 - Information 327
 - Instant Fuel Economy 319
 - Instrument Display Settings 326
 - Navigation 321
 - Power Flow/Engine Status Display 316
 - Range 317
 - Safety Support 325
 - Seat Belts 325
 - Speed Alarm 322
 - Switching the Display 315
 - Trip Meter 319
 - Warnings 327
 - Driving**
 - Braking 118
 - Turning on the Power 110
 - DRIVE MODE switch** 154
- E**
- e:HEV** 15
 - Elapsed Time** 321
 - Electric Power Steering (EPS) System**
 - Indicator 307
 - Emergency** 397
 - Emergency Stop Signal** 124
 - Engine**
 - Coolant 341
 - If the Battery Is Dead 383
 - Oil 338
 - Engine Coolant** 341
 - Adding to the Radiator 342
 - Adding to the Reserve Tank 342
 - Overheating 386
 - Engine oil pressure low Warning** 389
 - Engine Oil** 338
 - Adding 340
 - Checking 339
 - Engine oil pressure low Warning 389
 - Recommended Engine Oil 338
 - Environmental Protection Regulation** 406
 - EPS (Electric Power Steering) System**
 - Indicator 307
 - EV Indicator** 17
 - Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)** 27
 - Exterior Care (Cleaning)** 359
 - Exterior Mirrors** 99

F

Filters	
Fuel	346
Flat Tyre	367
Floor Mats	359
Fluids	
Brake	344
Continuously Variable Transmission	344
Engine Coolant	341
Windshield Washer	346
FM Radio	201
Fog Light	139
Folding Down the Rear Seats	90
Foot Brake	118
Front Airbags (SRS)	54
Front Seats	
Adjusting	88
Rear Seat Access	89
Front Wide View Camera	249
Fuel	
Average Fuel Economy	318
Gauge	312
Low Fuel Indicator	306
Range	317
Recommendation	132
Refueling	132
Fuel Fill Door	133
Unable to Unlock	398
Fuses	391
Inspecting and Changing	395
Locations	391, 393
G	
G-Meter	324
Gauge Display Settings	326
Gauges	311
Brightness Control	314
CHARGE/DECEL Gauge	312
Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist	313
Fuel Gauge	312

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge	312
Odometer	314
Outside Temperature	312
POWER Gauge	311
Speedometer	311
Tachometer	312
Traffic Sign Recognition System	313
Gear Display	328
General Information on the Audio System	236
Glass (care)	359, 361
Glove Box	167
Google built-in	210

H

Hands-Free Telephone System	220
Auto Phone Call Transfer	225
Auto Sync Phone	225
Favorite Contacts	222
HFT Status Display	221
Keypad	225
Latest Call History	225
Making a Call	223
Options During a Call	225
Phone Menu Screen	225
Receiving a Call	224
Ringtone	225
Hatch	104
Opening/Closing	104
Unable to Open	399
Hatch Release Button	105
Hazard Warning Button	10, 11
Head Restraints	87, 88
Headlight Integration with Wipers	138
Headlights	136
Adaptive Driving Beam	142
Auto High-Beam	140
Operating	136
Heated Door Mirror	151
Heater	176
Heaters (Seat)	174
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone System)	220
High Beam	138
High Beam Indicator	138
High Voltage Battery	15

- High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge ····· 312
- High Voltage System Coolant ····· 343
- Hill Start Assist System ····· 127
- Home Screen ····· 195
- Honda S+ Shift ····· 158
- Honda SENSING ····· 246
- I**
- iPod ····· 236
- iPhone ····· 236
- Identification Numbers**
- Engine, Motor, and Transmission ····· 404
- Vehicle Identification ····· 404
- Illumination Control** ····· 314
- Immobilizer System** ····· 70
- Indicator ····· 70
- In-Vehicle Infotainment** ····· 186
- About System Updates ····· 193
- About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment ····· 186
- Audio Remote Controls ····· 189
- Audio System Basic Operation ····· 186
- Connecting a Device ····· 190
- Mode change switch bar ····· 188
- Selecting an audio source ····· 187
- System status ····· 188
- USB Ports ····· 188
- Indicators** ····· 302
- 12-Volt Battery Charging System ····· 305
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed
 Follow (Amber) ····· 308
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed
 Follow (White/Green) ····· 266
- Adaptive Driving Beam ····· 142
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ····· 307
- Auto High-Beam ····· 140
- Automatic Brake Hold ····· 123
- Automatic Brake Hold System ····· 122
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
 (Amber) ····· 309
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
 (Grey) ····· 325
- COMFORT Mode ····· 154
- Deceleration Paddle Selector ····· 157
- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System ····· 307
- Engine oil pressure low Warning ····· 389
- EV ····· 17
- GT Mode ····· 154
- High Beam ····· 138
- Honda S+ Shift ····· 158
- Immobilizer System ····· 70
- INDIVIDUAL Mode ····· 154
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) ·····
 ······ 309
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/
 Green) ····· 276
- Lights On ····· 136
- Low Fuel ····· 306
- Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS ····· 308
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp ····· 306
- Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) ····· 305
- Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) ····· 304
- Parking Sensor ····· 308
- Power System ····· 306
- Ready/READY ····· 110
- Road Departure Mitigation (Amber) ····· 309
- Road Departure Mitigation (Grey) ····· 325
- Road Departure Mitigation System Steering
 Assist Auto OFF ····· 309
- Safety Support (Amber) ····· 309
- Safety Support (Green/Grey) ····· 325
- Seat Belt Reminder ····· 93, 305
- Security System Alarm ····· 71
- Shift Position ····· 115
- SPORT Mode ····· 154
- Supplemental Restraint System ····· 62, 305
- Transmission System ····· 308
- Turn Signal ····· 136
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF ····· 161, 307
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ····· 160, 307
- Information** ····· 327
- Instant Fuel Economy** ····· 319
- Instrument Display Settings** ····· 326
- Interior Care (Cleaning)** ····· 358
- Interior Lights** ····· 165
- Interior Rearview Mirror** ····· 99
- J**
- Jack ····· 379

Jump Starting 383

K

Key Number Tag 73

Keyless Access System 76

Keys 69

 Key Number Tag 73

 Remote Transmitter 74

 Replacing the Remote Battery 365

Kickdown 127

Knee Airbags 56

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 275

 Indicator (Amber) 309

 Indicator (White/Green) 276

Lead Car Departure Notification System 284

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto
..... 242

Licence Information 240

Lights 136, 364

 Active Cornering Lights 139

 Automatic 136

 Bulb Replacement 364

 Daytime Running Lights 139

 High Beam Indicator 138

 Interior 165

 Lights On 136

 Map 165

 Rear Fog Light 139

 Turn Signals 136

Limited stopping power Warning 390

Load Limit 106

Lock Presetting 80

Locking/Unlocking

 Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 83

 From Inside 82

 Using a Key 81

 Using the Keyless Access System 76

 Using the Remote Transmitter 74

 Without Using a Key 81

Lockout Prevention System 82

Low Fuel Indicator 306

Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator 308

Lower Anchorages 43

Lubricant Specifications Chart 402

Luggage (Load Limit) 106

Luggage Hooks 172

M

Maintenance 330

 12-Volt Battery 353

 Brake Fluid 344

 Cleaning 358

 Climate Control System 356

 Coolant 341

 Maintenance Record 335

 Maintenance Schedule 333

 Oil 338

 Precautions 330

 Remote Transmitter 365

 Replacing Light Bulbs 364

 Safety 331

 Transmission Fluid 344

 Tyres 349

 Under the Bonnet 336

Malfunction Indicator Lamp 306

Map Lights 165

Media Playback 205

Meters, Gauges 311

Mirrors

 Adjusting 99

 Door 99

 Interior Rearview 99

Modifications and Accessories 28

N

Navigation 321

Numbers (Identification) 404

O

Odometer 314

Oil (Engine) 338

 Adding 340

 Checking 339

 Engine oil pressure low Warning 389

 Recommended Engine Oil 338

Viscosity 338

Open Source Licences 240, 409

Opening

- Hatch 399

Opening/Closing

- Bonnet 337
- Power Windows 101

Outside Temperature 312

Overheating 386

P

Parking 118

Parking Brake 118

Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 305

Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 304

Parking Sensor Indicator 308

Parking Sensor System 297

Petrol 132

- Gauge 312
- Low Fuel Indicator 306
- Refueling 132

Pop-up Hood System 64

Position Lights 136

Post-Collision Braking System 67

Power Flow 214

Power Flow/Engine Status Display 316

Power Mode 109

Power Mode Reminder 109

Power System

- Turning on 110

Power System Indicator 306

Power Window Lock Button 102

Power Windows 101

POWER Button 109

POWER Gauge 311

Precautions While Driving 26

- Rain 26

Pregnant Women 96

Puncture (Tyre) 367

R

Radiator 342

Radio (FM) 201

Radio Data System (RDS) 202

Range 317

RDS (Radio Data System) 202

Ready/READY Indicator 110

Rear demister/Heated Door Mirror Button 151

Rear Fog Light 139

Rear Seat Access 89

Rear Seat Reminder 90

Rear Seats

- Folding Down 90
- Rear Seat Access 89

Rear View Camera 130

Rearview Mirror 99

Reboot Audio 195

Recommended Devices 237

Reduced stopping power Warning 390

Refueling 132

- Fuel Gauge 312
- Low Fuel Indicator 306
- Petrol 401

Regulations 407

Remote Transmitter 74

Replacement

- Bulbs 364
- Fuses 391
- Tyres 351
- Wiper Blade 347

Road Departure Mitigation System 259

- Indicator (Amber) 309
- Indicator (Grey) 325
- On and Off 261
- Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator 309

S

Safe Driving 20

Safety Check 23

Safety Labels 68

Safety Message 1

Safety Support 325

- Indicator (Amber) 309
- Indicator (Green/Grey) 325

Seat Belt

- Pregnant Women 96

Seat Belts 92, 325

- Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 94

- Checking 97
 - Fastening 94
 - Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/
Shoulder Seat Belt 47
 - Reminder 93
 - Warning Indicator 93, 305
 - Seat Heaters 174
 - Seats 86
 - Adjusting 86
 - Front Seats 88
 - Rear Seats 90
 - Seat Heaters 174
 - Security System 71
 - Immobilizer System Indicator 70
 - Security System Alarm Indicator 71
 - Selecting a Child Restraint System 35
 - Shift Button 114
 - Operation 114
 - Shift Position Indicator 115
 - Shifting (Transmission) 114
 - Side Airbags 58
 - Side Curtain Airbags 60
 - Spark Plugs 401
 - Specifications 401
 - Specified Fuel 132, 401
 - Speed Alarm 322
 - Speedometer 311
 - SRS Airbags (Airbags) 54
 - Start Up 194
 - Steering Wheel
 - Adjusting 85
 - Stopping 128
 - Sun Visor 168
 - Sunglasses Holder 173
 - Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 54
 - Indicator 305
 - Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) ·· 10, 11, 12
 - Switching the Display 315
 - Synchronization Mode 183
 - System Updates 196
- T**
- Tachometer 312
 - Temperature
 - Outside Temperature 312
 - Temperature Sensor 312
 - Tie-down Anchorages 172
 - Tools 363
 - Towing a Trailer 107
 - Towing Your Vehicle
 - Emergency 397
 - TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)
 - Indicator 308
 - Traffic Jam Assist 279
 - Traffic Sign Recognition System 287, 313
 - Transmission 114
 - Creeping 127
 - Fluid 344
 - Kickdown 127
 - Operating the Shift Button 114
 - Shift Button Indicator 114
 - Shift Position Indicator 115
 - System Indicator 308
 - Trip Computer 198
 - Trip Meter 319
 - Troubleshooting
 - Blown Fuse 391
 - Emergency Towing 397
 - Overheating 386
 - Power System Won't Start 380
 - Puncture/Flat Tyre 367
 - Warning Indicators 302
 - Turn Signals 136
 - Indicators (Instrument Panel) 136
 - Turning on the Power 110
 - Does Not Start 380
 - If the Battery Is Dead 383
 - Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 162
 - Indicator 308
 - Tyre Repair Kit 367
 - Tyres 349
 - Air Pressure 349, 402
 - Checking and Maintaining 349
 - Inspection 350
 - Puncture/Flat Tyre 367
 - Rotation 351
 - Tyre Repair Kit 367

Wear Indicators 350
 Winter Tyres 351

U

User Information 211
 USB Device 207
 USB Flash Drives 236
 USB Ports 188
 Utility Compliance 406

V

Vanity Mirrors 7
 Vehicle Identification Numbers 404
 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 160
 OFF button 161
 OFF Indicator 307
 System Indicator 307
 Viscosity (Oil) 338
 Visor 168
 VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 160
 OFF Indicator 307
 System Indicator 307
 VSA OFF Indicator 161

W

Walk Away Auto Lock 79
 Wallpaper Setup 199
 Warning Indicator On/Blinking 304
 Warning Labels 68
 Warnings 327
 Watts 402
 Wear Indicators (Tyre) 350
 Wi-Fi Connection 216
 Window Washers
 Adding/Refilling Fluid 346
 Switch 146
 Windows(Opening and Closing) 101
 Windscreen
 Defrosting/Demisting 149
 Wipers and Washers 146
 Windshield
 Cleaning 359, 361
 Washer Fluid 346

Wiper Blades 347
 Winter Tyres 351
 Wipers and Washers 146
 Automatic Intermittent Wipers 147
 Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 347
 Wired Connection 206
 Wireless Charger 169
 Worn Tyres 350